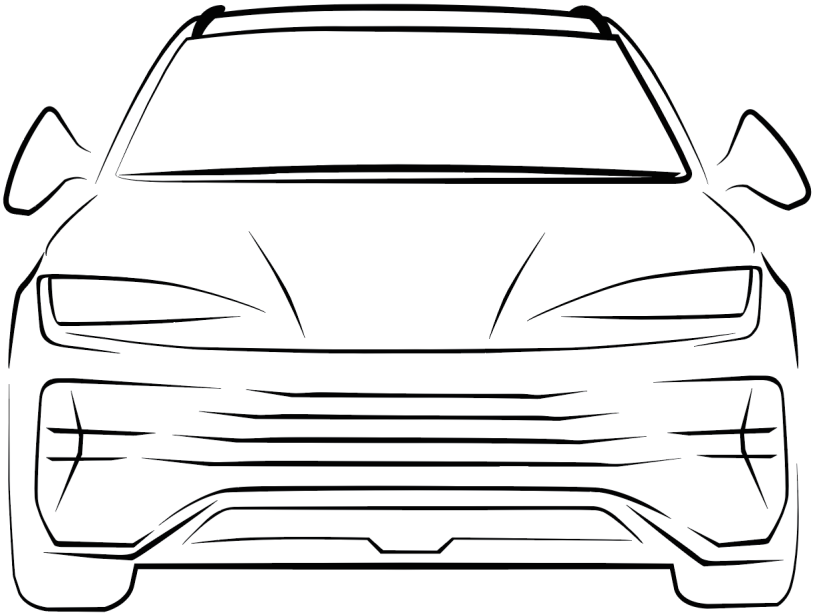
# BYD SEAL U DM-i

OWNER'S MANUAL



# Foreword

Thank you for choosing a BYD vehicle. Please read this manual carefully for proper use and maintenance.

Special instructions: BYD Auto Co., Ltd. recommends that you select genuine spare parts and properly use, maintain and repair the vehicle according to the requirements on this manual. Replacing any parts of the vehicle with non-genuine parts or modifying it will affect the performance of the vehicle, especially the safety and durability. All damages and performance problems of the vehicle arising from this are not covered by the warranty. Furthermore, vehicle modifications may also violate national laws, regulations and local governmental regulations.

Thank you for choosing BYD passenger vehicles and for your valuable comments and suggestions. To ensure better service for you, please provide accurate contact information. If the contact information is changed, please contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider in time to update the information in the system. At the same time, please pay attention to your country's relevant laws and regulations and local policies in time, and licence your vehicle as soon as possible, otherwise there may be a risk of being unable to licence your vehicle.

Descriptions marked with the "*" symbol and interfaces of PAD in this manual apply to some models only. The pictures used in this manual are only taken from one version of these models, and the actual vehicle shall prevail.

Pay attention to the "REMINDER", "CAUTION" and "WARNING" symbols in this manual, and follow the instructions carefully to avoid injury or damage. The hint types are defined as follows:

**REMINDER**

Items that must be observed to facilitate maintenance.

**CAUTION**

Items that must be observed to avoid damage to the vehicle.

**WARNING**

Items that must be observed to ensure personal safety.

is a safety mark to indicate an operation that should not be performed or an event that should not happen.

This manual is expected to help you use the product correctly, and does not provide any description of the configuration and software version of this product. For details about the product configuration and software version, please refer to the contract (if any) related to this product, or consult the dealer who sold the product to you.

**Sustainability**

As a hybrid passenger vehicle, BYD SEAL U DM-i is an environmentally friendly product. Please visit https://reach.bydeurope.com for environmental protection information about the vehicle.

It is everyone's responsibility to protect the environment. Please use this vehicle properly and dispose of any waste and cleaning materials according to local laws and regulations.

**Contact Us**

If you require assistance or clarification on policies or procedures, please contact the customer service center.

E-mail: Autoservice.contact@byd.com

Call 00800-10203000 for 24/7 roadside assistance or customer service (9:00-18:00, Monday-Saturday).

**Copyright © BYD Auto Co., Ltd. All rights reserved.**

**No part of this document may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without prior written consent of BYD Auto Co., Ltd.**

**All rights reserved**

## Figure Index

**Exterior.....7**

**Dashboard..... 9**

**Interior..... 10**

**Doors..... 11**

## Safety

**Seat Belts.....14**

Introduction to Seat Belts.....14

Seat Belt Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) Function.....14

Pretensioner and Force Limiter Function of Seat Belt*..... 14

Seat Belt Use.....14

Seat Belt Reminders.....16

**Airbags..... 17**

Introduction to Airbags.....17

Driver and Front Passenger Front Airbags..... 17

Front Seat Side Airbags.....18

Side Curtain Airbags.....19

Airbag Triggering Conditions.....19

Cases Where Airbags May Not Be Deployed.....22

**Child Restraint System (CRS).....24**

Children Restraint System..... 24

Child Seat Mounting.....24

Installing Child Restraint Systems..... 24

**Working Modes of Dual-Mode (DM) System.....30**

Introduction to the Working Mode of Dual-mode System.....30

Dual-mode System Operating Mode Selection.....35

Notes on working mode of dual-mode systems.....39

**Anti-theft System..... 41**

Anti-theft System.....41

**Data Collection and Processing..... 42**

Data Collection and Processing.....42

Vehicle Data Processing..... 42

Permanent Vehicle Transfer to Third Parties and Offline Mode.....44

Disclosure of Personal Data to Authorities..... 44

Your Data Protection Rights.....45

## Instrument Cluster

**Instrument Cluster..... 48**

View of Instrument Cluster..... 48

Instrument Cluster Indicators.....49

## Controller Operation

**Doors and Keys.....60**

Keys.....60

Locking/Unlocking Doors..... 64

Smart Access and Start System..... 71

Child Protection Lock.....73

**Seats.....73**

Seat Precautions..... 73

Front Seat Adjustment..... 75

Folding Rear Seats.....77

Rear Headrests..... 77

**Steering Wheel..... 78**

Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....78

**Switches..... 79**

Light Switches..... 79

Wiper Switch.....82

Front Left Door Switch..... 83

Odometer Toggle.....86

Headlight Adjustment..... 86
Emergency Light.....86
Steering Wheel Switch Set..... 87
Sunroof Switch*.....89
E-Call Switch*..... 91
Interior Lights..... 92
Passenger Airbag (PAB) Switch..... 92

## Using and Driving

**Charging/Discharging Instructions.... 96**
Charging Instructions.....96
Charge Port Cover..... 99
Control Function of Charging Port Anti-theft Lock..... 105
Memory setting function.....107
Discharging Instructions..... 108
**Battery..... 111**
High-voltage Battery..... 111
Starter iron battery.....112
**Usage Guidelines..... 114**
Break-in Period..... 114
Trailer Towing..... 115
Fuel..... 122
How to Save Fuel and Extend Service Life of the Vehicle..... 123
Carrying Luggage..... 124
Risk of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning..... 125
Wading into Water..... 126
Fire Prevention..... 127
**Starting and Driving..... 128**
Starting the Vehicle..... 128
Driving.....129
Remote Start*..... 131
Gearshift control panel..... 132
Electric Parking Brake (EPB)..... 133
Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH).....135
Driving Precautions..... 136
**Driver Assistance..... 138**
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)..... 138
Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC)..... 142
Predictive Collision Warning (PCW) & Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB).....144
Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA) & Front Cross Traffic Braking (FCTB).....151
High Beam Assist System(HMA).....153
Lane Departure Assist (LDA) System.... 154
Emergency Lane Keeping Assist(ELKA)..... 156
Blind Spot Assist System (BSA).....158
Traffic Sign Recognition System..... 160
Intelligent Speed Limit Control (ISLC)..161
Driver Attention Warning system.....162
Child Presence Detection (CPD)*.....163
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS).....164
Panoramic View System.....165
Parking Assist System(PAS).....170
Tire Pressure Monitoring.....174
Head-up Display (HUD)..... 177
Driving Safety System..... 178
**Other Main Functions.....182**
Interior Rearview Mirror.....182
Electric Side Mirrors..... 182
Wiper.....183
Snow Chains..... 184

## In-Vehicle Devices

**Multimedia System..... 188**
Multimedia Buttons.....188

**A/C System..... 190**
A/C Button..... 190
A/C Operation Interface..... 191
Function Definition..... 192
Vents..... 195
Air Purification System*..... 196
A/C Settings..... 197
**BYD Applications..... 197**
About BYD App.....197
Account Registration..... 198
Vehicle Condition and Control.....198
Individual Center and Vehicle Management.....199
**Storage Device.....199**
Door Bins..... 199
Glove Box..... 199
Bill Box..... 199
Central Armrest Box..... 200
Cup Holder.....200
File Pockets.....201
Glasses Case..... 201
**Other Devices..... 201**
Sun Visor.....201
Vanity Mirror*..... 201
Grab Handles.....202
12 V Auxiliary power.....202
Front-Row USB Ports.....202
Rear Charging port..... 202
SD Card Slot*..... 202
Shade Curtain.....203
Smartphone Wireless Charging Position*..... 203
Trunk Lid.....205
Emergency hammer.....205

## Maintenance

**Maintenance Information.....208**
Maintenance Cycle and Items.....208
**Regular Maintenance..... 211**
Regular Maintenance..... 211
Vehicle Corrosion Prevention..... 211
Paintwork Maintenance Tips..... 212
Exterior Cleaning..... 212
Interior Cleaning.....213
**Self-Maintenance.....215**
Self-Maintenance..... 215
Sunroof Maintenance.....217
Vehicle Storage.....218
Opening the Hood.....218
Refrigerant.....219
Washer..... 220
Braking System.....221
Engine Oil.....221
A/C System.....222
Wiper Blades.....222
Tire Maintenance.....223
Fuses..... 226

## When Faults Occur

**When Faults Occur..... 236**
If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted.....236
Failure to Start the Vehicle.....236
If Engine Flameout Occurs during Driving.....237
Engine Overheated.....237
If the Vehicle Needs Towing.....238
If a Tire Goes Flat.....239

## Specifications

**Vehicle Data..... 246**

Vehicle Data..... 246

**Vehicle Identification..... 250**

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)..... 250

Vehicle Nameplate..... 251

Model and Serial Number of Drive Motor..... 251

**Warning Labels..... 251**

Warning Label Location..... 251

**Transponder Mounting Position..... 254**

Transponder Mounting Position..... 254

**Declarations of Conformity..... 254**

Declarations of Conformity..... 254

Manufacturer and Importer Information..... 256

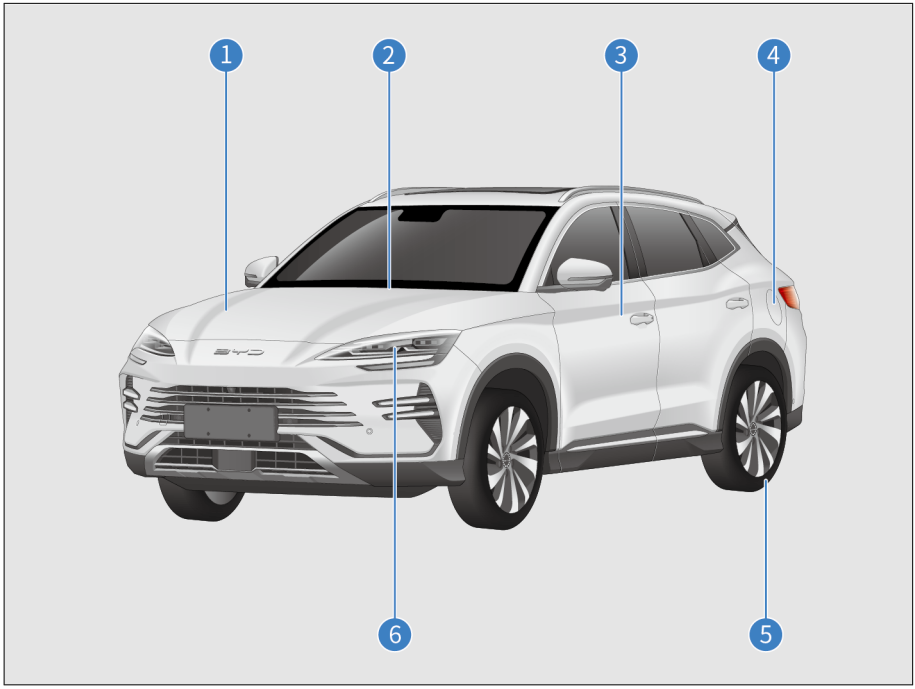
Battery Parameters of Electrochemical Performance and Durability..... 258

## Abbreviation List

**Abbreviations..... 263**

# Figure Index

## Exterior





1 Hood ***P218***

Cooling System ***P219***

Washer ***P220***

Brake Fluid ***P221***

Front Compartment Fuse Box ***P227***

2 Front Wiper ***P183***

3 Doors ***P64***

Locking/Unlocking Doors ***P64***

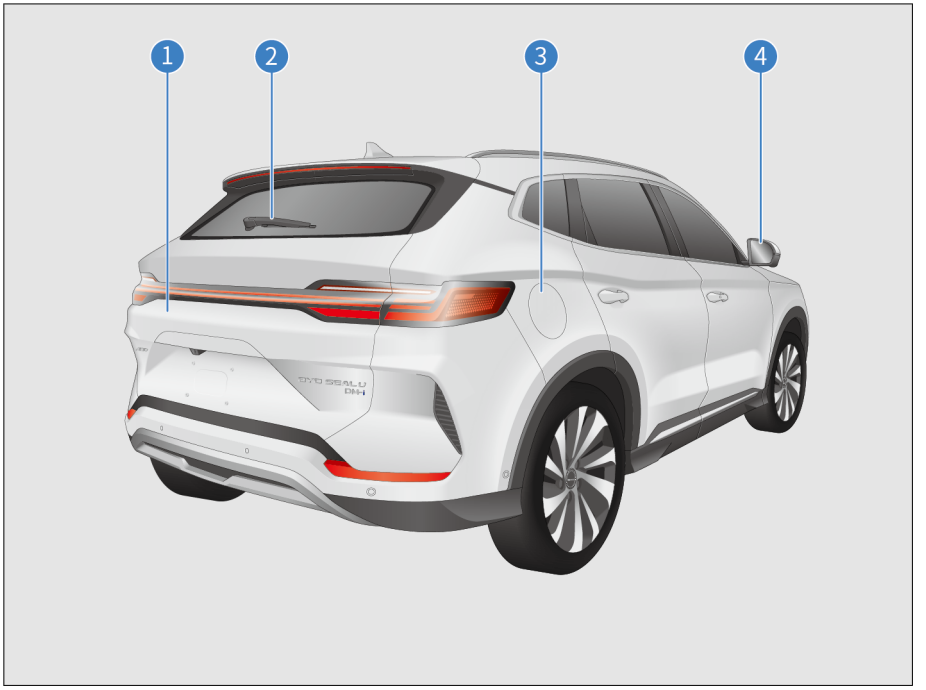
4 Refueling Cover ***P122***

Refueling ***P122***

5 Tires ***P223***

Tire leakage ***P239***

6 Lights ***P216***



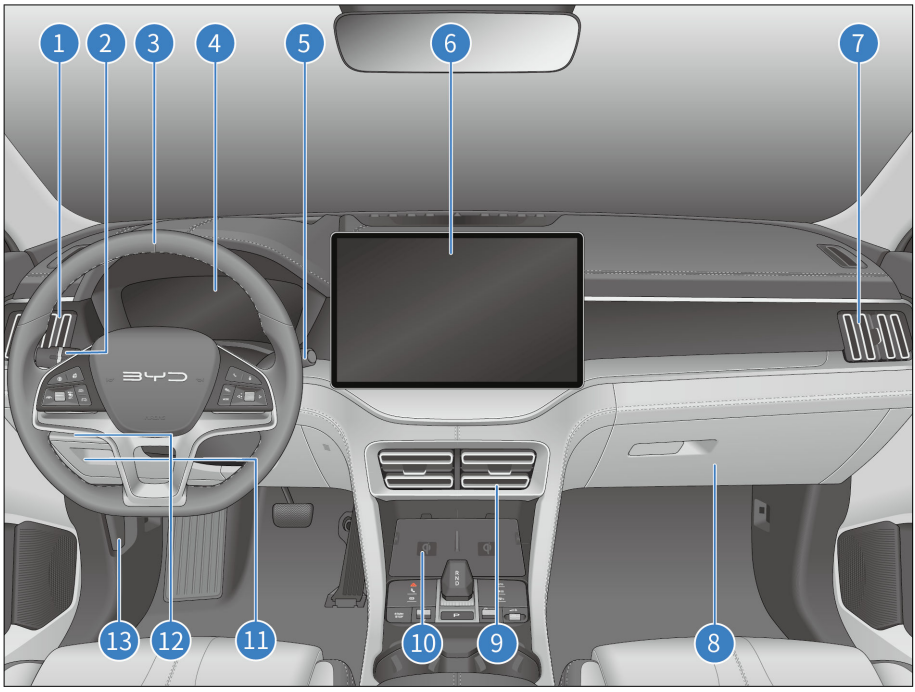

1 Trunk ***P67***

2 Rear Wiper ***P183***

3 Charging Port Cover ***P100***

4 Electric external rearview mirrors ***P182***

# Dashboard




1 Front Side Vent ***P195***

2 Light Switches ***P79***

3 Steering Wheel ***P78***

Steering Wheel ***P78***

Steering Wheel Switch Group ***P87***

4 Instrument Cluster ***P48***

5 Wiper Switch ***P82***

6 Infotainment Touchscreen ***P188***

7 Front Side Vent ***P195***

8 Glovebox ***P199***

9 Front Center Vent ***P195***

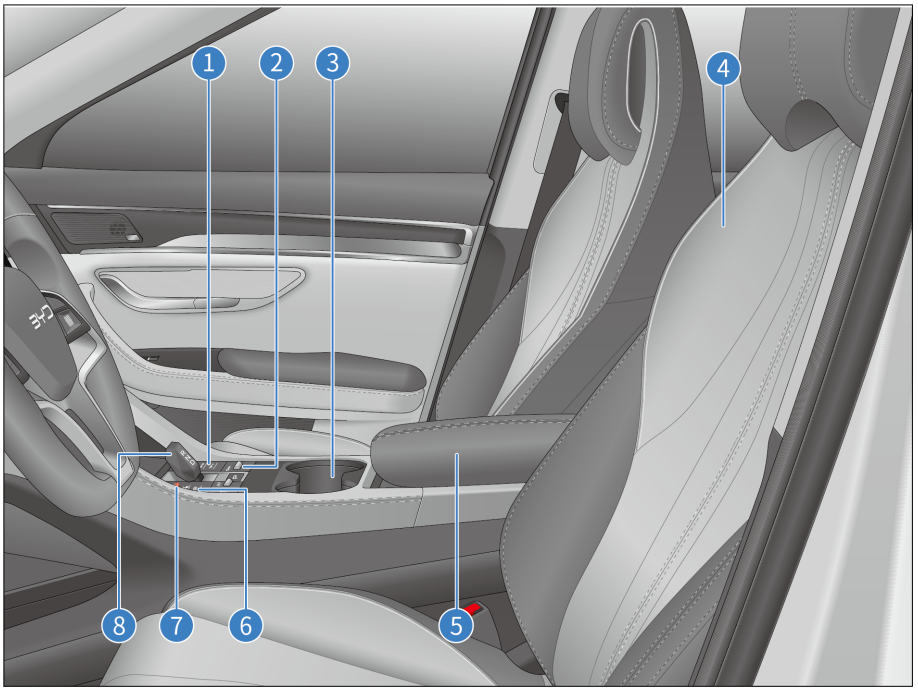
10 Wireless Phone Charging Location ***P203***

11 Bill Box ***P199***

12 Headlight adjustment switch ***P86***

13 Hood Handle ***P218***

# Interior




1 A/C ON/OFF ***P190***

2 Mode Switch Set* ***P35***

3 Front Seat Cup Holder ***P200***

4 Seats ***P73***

Power front seat adjustment ***P74***

5 Center Console Cubby ***P200***

6 Switches

ESC Switch* ***P178***

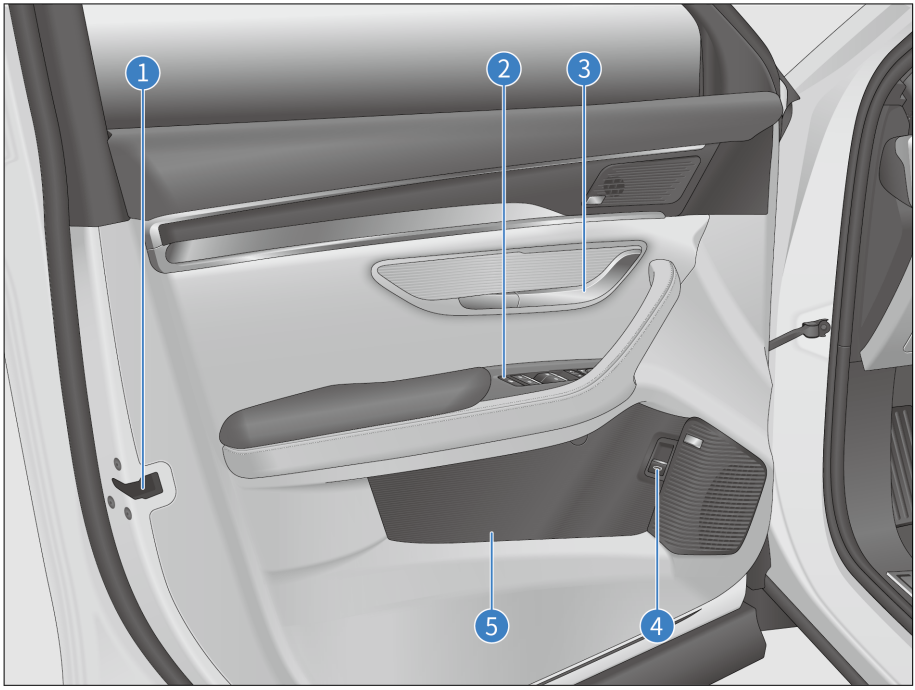
BSD System Switch ***P158***

Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)* ***P154***

Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH) Switch* ***P135***

7 Hazard Warning Light Switch ***P86***

8 Mode Switch Set* ***P132***




1 Emergency Vehicle Locking with Mechanical Key ***P70***

2 Front Left Door Switch ***P83***

Power Window Switches ***P83***

Window Lock Button ***P85***

Central Lock ***P85***

Side Mirror Adjustment Switch ***P85***

3 Interior Door Handle ***P64***

4 Interior Trunk Lid Button ***P67***

5 Door Bins ***P199***

# 01 SAFETY

Seat Belts..... 14
Airbags..... 17
Child Restraint System (CRS)..... 24
Working Modes of Dual-Mode (DM) System.....30
Anti-theft System.....41
Data Collection and Processing..... 42

# Seat Belts

Studies have shown that proper use of seat belts can significantly reduce casualties in emergency braking, sudden steering, or collisions. Please read the following information carefully and observe it strictly.

**CAUTION**

- Fasten the seat belt and sit properly while the vehicle is in motion.
- The driver should ensure that all occupants are wearing seat belts before driving the vehicle to prevent serious injury or death in emergency braking or in a collision.
- The seat belts on the vehicle are mainly designed according to the body size of adults, and are not suitable for children. Please select an appropriate child safety seat according to the age and body size of children. (Refer to the Child Safety Seats in this chapter)
- If the seat belt is damaged or dysfunctional, immediately contact a BYD authorized service provider for confirmation and handling. Do not use the corresponding seat before such confirmation and handling.

- BYD has highly emphasized that driver and occupants should always fasten their seat belts while in the vehicle. Failure to do so increases the risk of injury in case of an accident.
- It is recommended that children be seated in rear seats and always use seat belts and a suitable CRS. In emergency braking or collision, unprotected children may be seriously injured and their lives may be endangered. Likewise, do not allow children to sitting on someone's lap, for there is insufficient protection.

## Emergency Locking Retractor(ELR)

- During the sharp turn, emergency braking and collision process, or when the occupant leans forward too quickly, the seat belt automatically locks to effectively restrain and protect the occupant.
- Occupants can move freely when the vehicle is running smoothly and the seat belts are pulled out or retracted slowly.
- If the seat belt locks due to fast retraction, allow it to retract for a distance of 15mm and slowly pull it back.

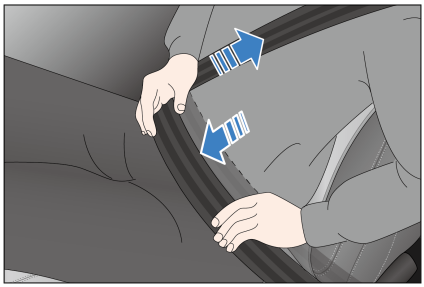
## Pretensioner and Force Limiter*

When a severe front collision occurs and the triggering conditions of the pretensioner are met, the pretensioner quickly retracts part of the seat belt and locks it to improve the protection of the occupant. The force limiter limits the seat-belt restraint force to the occupant's body to a certain extent so as to avoid injury to the occupant due to an excessive restraint force.

1. Adjust the seat position and seatback angle. (see ***P74***)
2. Adjust the position of the three-point seat belt.

- Keep the correct sitting posture and pull out the shoulder belt diagonally across the entire shoulder without contacting the neck or falling from the

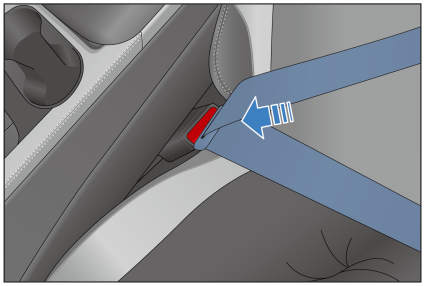
shoulder. Position the lap belt as low as possible around the hip.



**CAUTION**

- The shoulder belt should cross the centre of the shoulder. The seat belt should be far from the neck and not liable to slip from the shoulder. Otherwise, it cannot function well in the event of emergency braking or accident and may even cause severe injury.
- The lap belt should be positioned as low as possible across the hip to prevent any injury caused by pressing against the abdomen in case of an accident.
- The seat belt should be fitted tight to the body for better protection.

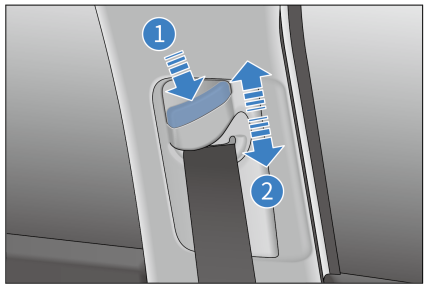
3. Insert the latch into the buckle until it clicks, and then pull it back to make sure it is firmly locked. Do not fasten the belt with any part of the strap twisted.



4. The height of the front seat belts can be adjusted for optimum comfort and protection.

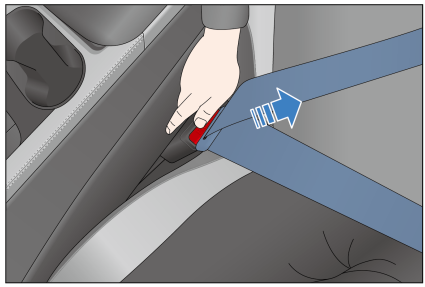
① Press the adjuster release button.

②Move it up or down to the desired height and then release it.




5. Pull the belt firmly to check that the adjuster is locked.
6. Unlock the seat belt.

- Press the red unlock button on the buckle. The latch plate pops out, and the seat belt automatically retracts. If the seat belt does not retract smoothly and automatically, pull it out and check whether it is twisted.



**REMINDER**

- For normal functioning of the rear seat belt, ensure that its latch is inserted into the corresponding buckle during use. The driver

**REMINDER**

should remind occupants to wear seat belts properly.

- The driver should ensure that all occupants are wearing seat belts before driving the vehicle.

**CAUTION**

- One seat belt is for one occupant only. Do not allow multiple occupants (including children) to share one seat belt.
- Avoid travelling with the seatback leaning too far back. The seat belt protection performs best when the seatback is upright.
- Make sure that no seat belt or itsspring bolt/buckle becomes pressed by the door; otherwise the seat belt may be damaged.
- Check the seat belts regularly Check for cuts, wear, looseness, and other abnormalities. If any problem is found, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for confirmation and handling. Until then, do not use the corresponding seat.
- Do not remove, disassemble or modify the seat belts without permission.
- After an accident, have the seat belts checked at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. If the preloading function is activated, the seat belt must be replaced.
- In the event of a severe accident, regardless of whether the seat belt has an apparent damage, replace it together with the seat assembly, and thoroughly check the airbag system.

**CAUTION**

- Pregnant women should also fasten their seat belt properly. Particularly, be sure to position the lap belt as low across the hip as possible to prevent serious injury.
- Do not insert foreign objects such as coins and clips into the buckle as they prevent proper connection between the latch and buckle.

## Seat Belt Reminders

If any vehicle occupant fails to fasten his/her seat belt after the vehicle is started, a visual and sound alarm will go off until the corresponding seat belt is properly fastened.

- Unfastened seat belt indicator
  - This indicator flashes if any seat belt is not fastened.
- Display of unfastened belt’ s seat
  - The indicator for the seat with unfastened seat belt lights up and is steady on in case of abnormal conditions in the vehicle.
- Unfastened seat belt reminder for front passenger
  - When the vehicle is powered on, if the driver or the front passenger does not fasten the seat belt, the main seat belt reminder indicator and the reminder indicator for the corresponding seat lights up; if the seat belt is still not fastened when the vehicle is running, the seat belt reminder indicator stays on and there is a warning sound.
- Unfastened seat belt reminder for rear passengers*

- When the vehicle is powered on, if any rear passenger does not fasten the seat belt, the main seat belt reminder indicator and the reminder indicator for the corresponding seat light up. While the vehicle is in motion and occupants have not buckled up, the seat belt reminder indicator is on and audible alarm is given.

- When the driver and all passengers have fastened their seat belts, the main unfastened seat belt warning light and all warning lights for corresponding seats go out.
- In the event of abnormality or function failure, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider. Do not use the corresponding seat until the functions return to normal.
- When driving, make sure all occupants have their seat belts properly fastened to prevent serious injury or death in emergency braking or in a collision.

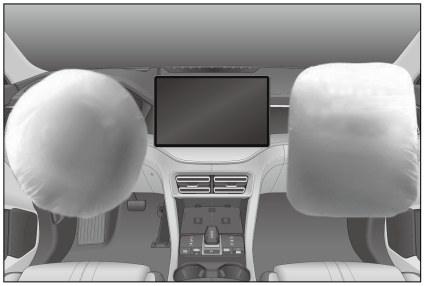
# Airbags

- The airbag system, a part of the supplemental restraint system (SRS), is designed to supplement the seats and seat belts. When SRS deployment conditions are met in a serious collision accident, the airbag system deploys quickly to protect heads and chests of both drivers and passengers together with seat belts, thus reducing the severity of injuries.
- As an integral part of the vehicle's passive safety protection system, the airbag system does not replace seat belts and must be used in combination with seat belts to maximise protection.
- According to the collision type, the airbag is generally divided into frontal airbag and side airbag. The frontal airbag includes the driver airbag and front passenger airbag, and the side airbag includes the front side airbag,the front centre airbag and curtain airbag.

**REMINDER**

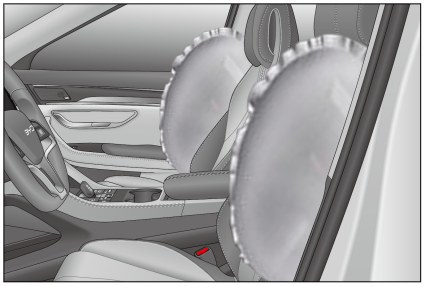
- Occupants must sit in a proper position to maximize the protection provided by seat belts and the airbag system.
- Do not disassemble or assemble airbag components without authorisation.
- Non-BYD genuine seat covers may worsen the airbag performance or result in injury. Do not place anything between the side airbag and the occupant.
- Do not apply excessive force to the side of seats equipped with side airbags.
- After a collision, although the airbag module is not deployed and the pre-tensioner seat belt is not locked, the airbag computer may be encrypted to protect the passengers from high voltage. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.

The vehicle is equipped with driver airbags and front passenger front airbags. When the airbag system electronic control unit (ECU) detects a moderate to severe frontal impact during driving, the airbag deploys to assist in protecting the heads and chests of the driver and the front passenger to reduce the severity of injury to the driver and the front passenger.



## Front Seat Side Airbags

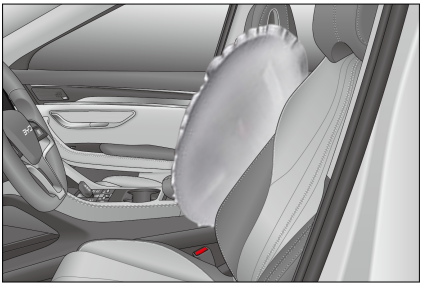
- The vehicle is equipped with side airbags for the left and right front seats (installed in the outer edges of the front seat backrests and marked with"AIRBAG", as shown):



- When the airbag triggering conditions are met due to a moderate to severe side impact during driving, the airbag deploys to assist in protecting the chest of the passenger on the impacted side to reduce the degree of injury.
- Generally, only the airbag on the impacted side deploys in the event of a side impact.
- If the impact occurs on the passenger side, the airbag on the passenger side deploys even if there is no passenger in the seat.
- In order to obtain the best protection from the seat side airbag, the passenger must fasten the seat belt and sit upright against the seat back.

**Front Far Side Airbag**

- The vehicle is equipped with the front centre airbag (installed in the inner edge of the driver seat and marked "AIRBAG", as shown):



- When a moderate to severe front or side impact and the triggering conditions are met, the front centre airbag deploys to protect the heads and shoulders of the non-impact side passenger, to reduce the extent of injury to which impact side occupants are injured on the non-impact side.
- If the impact occurs on the front passenger side, the far side airbag deploys even if there is no passenger in the seat.
- For optimum protection from the driver front centre airbag, the occupant must have their seat belt fastened and sit upright against the seatback.

**Vehicles Equipped with Seat Side Airbags and Front Centre Airbag**

1. Do not wet the seat backrest with water. If the backrest is wet by rain or water spray, the function of the side airbag and front centre airbag system may be hindered.
2. Do not cover or replace the seat backrest cover by yourself.

Inappropriate seat backrest cover replacement or covering hinders the deployment of seat side airbags and front centre airbag in the event of a collision.

- The vehicle is equipped with left and right side curtain airbags (installed at the junction of the body side trim and the ceiling and marked with"Curtain AIRBAG" on the A-pillartrim, B-pillar trim, and C-pillartrim, as shown).



- When the ECU detects a moderate to severe impact and the triggering conditions are met, the curtain airbag deploys to protect the occupant's head.

**REMINDER**

- When a side impact occurs, generally only the airbag on the impacted side deploys.
- For optimum curtain airbag protection, the occupant must have their seat belt fastened and be sitting in an upright position.

## Airbag Triggering Conditions

- Airbag triggering conditions: In the event of a vehicle collision, whether an airbag will be triggered is decided by factors such as the amount of collision energy, accident type, collision angle, obstacles, and vehicle speed. The airbag system may be triggered in special collisions.
- The airbag system does not always work in any accident, and generally it will not be triggered in the event of a minor frontal collision, rear collision or rollover. In this case, the driver and passengers are protected by their properly fastened seat belts.
- Determinants of airbag system triggering: During a collision, a comprehensive and intelligent comparison is made between the deceleration curve obtained by the Electronic Control Unit(ECU )and the set value. If the signal such as the deceleration curve generated and measured during the collision is below the preset reference value in the ECU, airbags do not deploy, even if the vehicle may have been severely deformed in an accident.
- The ECU of the BYD airbag system has been set up with considerations of common misuse and road conditions. However, due to the increasing changes in causes and forms of vehicle collisions, for your safety, please strictly follow this user manual, use the vehicle correctly, and avoid its misuse. Otherwise, there is no guarantee that the airbags will achieve their expected effect.

**Cases When Airbags May Be Deployed**

The vehicle's nose hits the ground when crossing a deep groove.

The vehicle hits a bump or kerbstone.

The vehicle's nose hits the ground when going down a steep slope.

One side of the vehicle is hit by another vehicle.

**Cases When Airbags May Not Be Deployed**

The vehicle hits a concrete column, tree, or other slim objects.

The vehicle goes under a truck or another large vehicle.

The vehicle tail is hit by another vehicle.

The vehicle rolls over.

The vehicle hits a wall or a vehicle at a side other than the front side.

Parts other than the passenger compartment receive side impact.

The lateral side of the vehicle is hit diagonally.

The lateral side of the vehicle hits a columnar object.

**WARNING**

- Airbags are designed for specific models. Any change to suspension, tyre size, bumpers, chassis and factory-equipped devices may adversely affect the airbag system. Users must not use any parts of the airbag system on other car models; doing so may lead to failure of the airbag system.
- The driver shall keep the distance between the chest and steering wheel at least 25 cm for the most effective protection when the system is triggered.
- Fasten your seat belt and sit properly while the vehicle is in motion. If the seat belt is not fastened, if the occupant is leaning forward or sitting improperly, airbag deployment can increase the risk of injury.

**WARNING**

- Do not paste stickers, cover or decorate the hub cover of the steering wheel, the right side surface of the dashboard or the surface of A, B, and C pillar trims and seat side airbag. Clean these surfaces with a dry or damp cloth, without applying too much pressure.
- A child is not to be seated in the front passenger seat, nor are they to ride sitting on a front passenger's lap, to prevent serious injury or even casualty caused by airbag deployment.
- No accessories, such as telephone holders, cups, ashtrays, may be installed on airbag covers or within their action range. Otherwise, airbag deployment will increase the risk of injury in an accident.
- Side airbags and side curtain airbags deploy quickly with high impact forces. Occupants must not lean against the doors of vehicles equipped with these airbags while these vehicles are in motion. Failure to do so could result in serious injury or even death.
- Do not place other trims or articles within the action range of any side curtain airbag (e.g., windscreens, side door glass, A-pillar shields, roof, B-pillar shields, C-pillar shields and auxiliary handles). Otherwise, trims or objects will be thrown out due to the strong force released when side curtain airbags deploy, or will cause failure of side curtain airbags to deploy properly,

**WARNING**

resulting in serious or even life-threatening injuries.

- When transferring car ownership, make sure to pass on all of the vehicle's documents.
- Do not modify or replace seats or trims of the seats with side airbags. These changes may prevent normal deployment of side airbags, and thereby cause airbag system failure or unintended deployment of side airbags, resulting in serious injury or death.
- Do not disassemble or repair the A-pillar trim, ceiling, B-pillar trim or C-pillar trim, which contain side curtain airbags. These changes can cause failure of the airbag system or accidental deployment of curtain airbags, which may cause serious injury or even death.
- Do not change any component of the airbag system, including any corresponding label. It is recommended that any operation done to the airbags be performed by a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- Airbags can only provide one-time accident protection. Once the airbag is triggered or damaged, the airbag system must be replaced.
- Follow safety regulations and procedures related to the scrapping of parts of the vehicle or its airbag system.
- The airbag system has strong anti-interference and anti-disturbance resistance to electromagnetic

**WARNING**

fields around it. However, to avoid accidents, do not use the vehicle in an electromagnetic environment that violates national regulations.

- The airbag system of this vehicle is designed with full consideration of domestic common misuses and road conditions. However, in order to avoid accidents, do not have the bottom of the vehicle impacted or drive roughly in harsh road conditions.
- This vehicle's airbag system has been fully verified to seamlessly match the vehicle's original wiring harness system. Any wiring harness modification or alteration may cause the airbags to deploy mistakenly under normal conditions or fail to deploy in the event of a collision.

**It is recommended that you contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider immediately if any of the following situations occurs.**

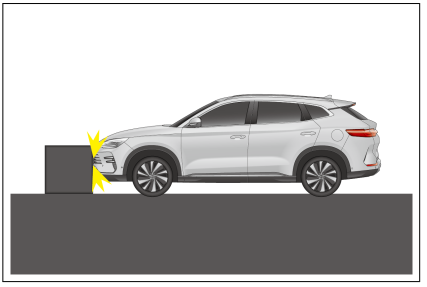
- The airbag has deployed.
- Instrument cluster airbag warning light lights up abnormally.
- Airbags do not deploy when the front part (shaded part in the figure) of the vehicle suffers a collision.
- The airbag cover has been scratched, cracked or otherwise damaged.
- Airbags need to be removed, disassembled, installed or repaired.
- Side airbags and curtain airbags have deployed.
- An impact to a vehicle door (shaded part in the figure) in an accident is

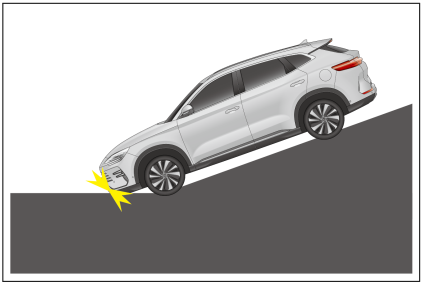
not adequate to cause the airbag to deploy.

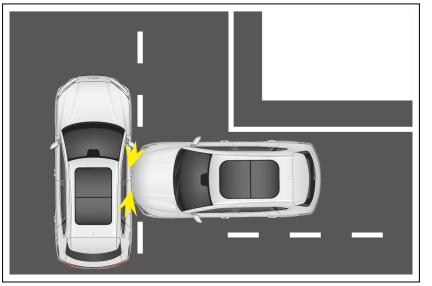
- The surface of the seat with a side airbag is scratched, cracked or damaged similarly.
- Decorative (liner) parts at A-pillar with built-in curtain airbags, roof beam and C-pillar are scratched, cracked, or damaged similarly.

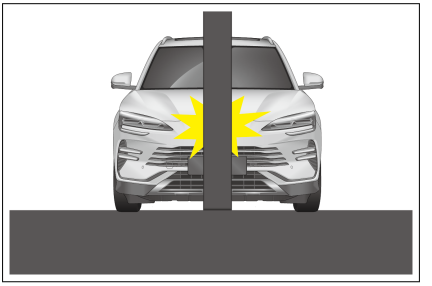
## Cases where airbags may / may not be deployed

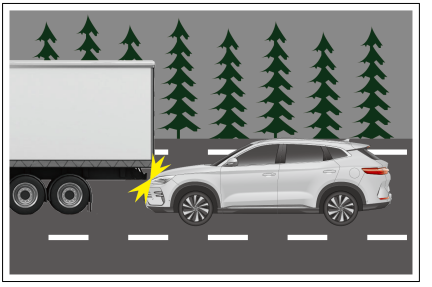


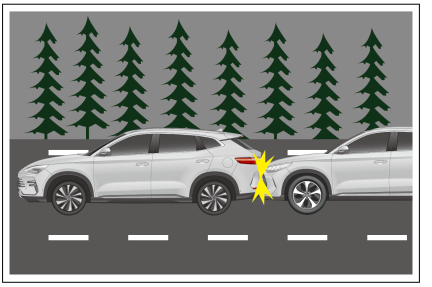




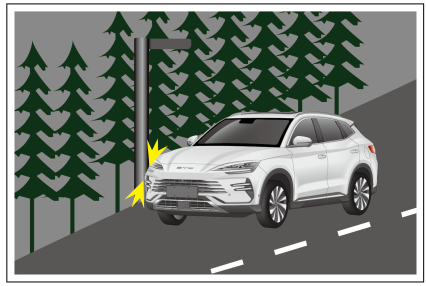


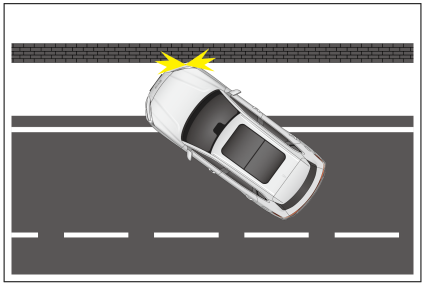


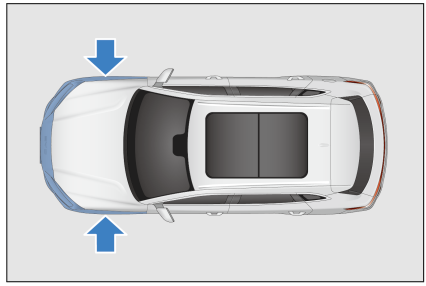


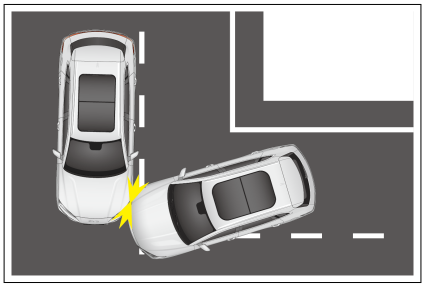


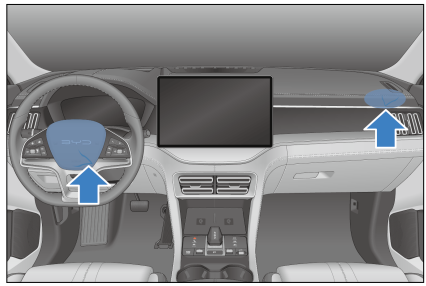


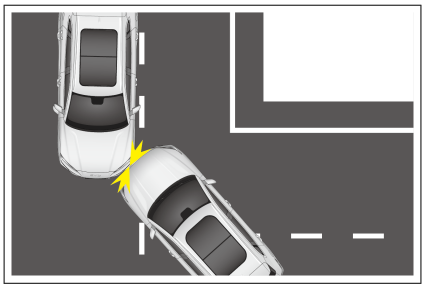


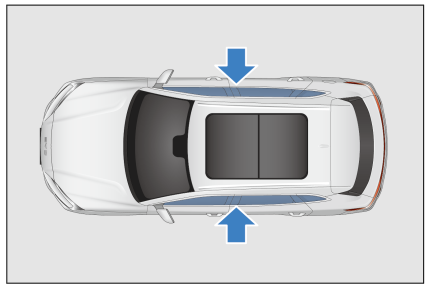












# Child Restraint System (CRS)

Child restraint systems provide good protection to your child occupants in an accident. For the child's safety, please carefully read the instructions provided with the child restraint and in this manual before installing a child restraint.

**WARNING**

- Never carry a child on your lap in a vehicle journey.
- An appropriate child restraint system must be used for your child.
- Please follow the instructions provided with the child restraint system and in this manual to make sure a child restraint it is properly installed in the vehicle.
- When the child restraint is removed from the seat, ensure it is stored safely.
- Failure to follow the advice given, or the instructions from the child restraint system manufacturer, can endanger life or lead to serious personal injury.

Children should use an appropriate child restraint system, and it is recommended that children are seated on a rear outboard seat position. Children should sit comfortably and safely. Children of all ages and sizes must always sit correctly secured in the vehicle.

**Important considerations for selecting a child restraint system**

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child restraint system must be approved in accordance with either ECE R44 or ECE R129.

It is recommended that children are seated on a rear outboard seat position, and according to the child seat installation instruction provided by the child seat manufacturer.

- Where possible, the child seat should be secured with the top tether strap.
- The backrest of the child seat must lay as flat as possible against the vehicle seat backrest.
- If required, adjust the seat backrest angle so that the child seat lies flat against the backrest.
- Once it has been installed, if the child seat is touching the head restraint and therefore cannot be positioned flat against the backrest, raise the head restraint all the way up, or remove it and stow safely in the vehicle.

For additional installation instructions, please read the instructions provided with your child restraint system.

## Installing Child Restraint Systems

**Installation in the front passenger seat**

- NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
- When a forward-facing child restraint system is used on the front passenger seat, ensure that the seat is positioned fully rearward away from the active airbag.

- If required:
  - Adjust the front passenger seat rearwards so that there is no contact between the child sitting in the front passenger seat and the vehicle interior.
  - Adjust the front passenger seatback so it has secure contact with the child restraint system.
- When using a rear-facing child seat, turn the PAB switch to OFF, to disable the front passenger front airbag. For details, see “Passenger Airbag Switch”.



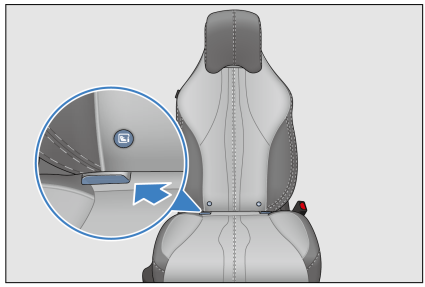

**WARNING**

- The passenger airbag switch must be turned to ON, immediately after the rear- facing child restraint system is removed from the front passenger seat, to enable the front passenger seat airbag.
- Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat with the front passenger airbag activated.
- Failure to follow the advice given, or the instructions from the child restraint system manufacturer, can endanger life or lead to serious personal injury.
- Front-facing passengers (children or adults) must never sit on the front passenger seat with the passenger airbag deactivated.

**WARNING**

- When a forward facing child restraint system is used on the front passenger seat, ensure the seat is positioned fully rearward away from the active airbag.

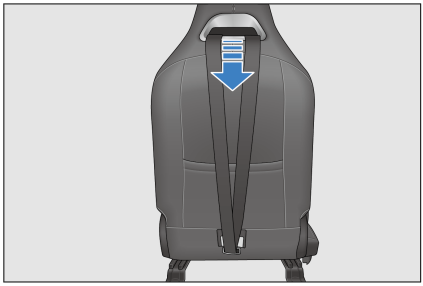
- The front passenger seat is equipped with ISOFIX/i-Size anchorages. The anchorage locations are identified by a marking (see the illustration) located on the seatback, directly above the associated anchorages.



- The front passenger seat is equipped with a top tether strap anchorage on the back.

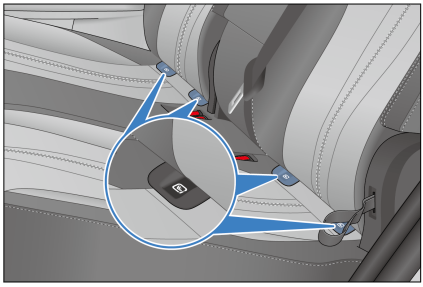


- When the child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat with a top tether:
  - Route it through the aperture of the head restraint.

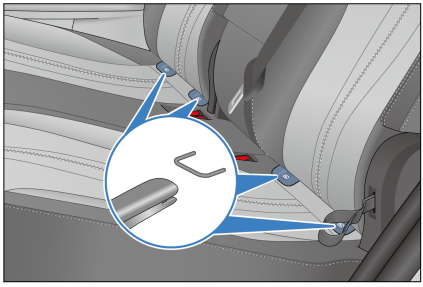


**Installation in the rear seat**

- The anchorage locations are identified by a marking (see the illustration) located on the seatback, directly above the associated anchorages.



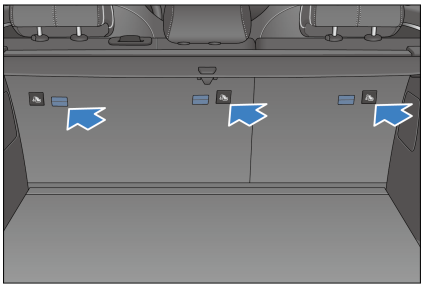
- The rear outboard seats are equipped with ISOFIX/i-Size anchorages.



**CAUTION**

The ISOFIX/ i-Size anchorages are located in the gap between the seat cushion and the seat back.

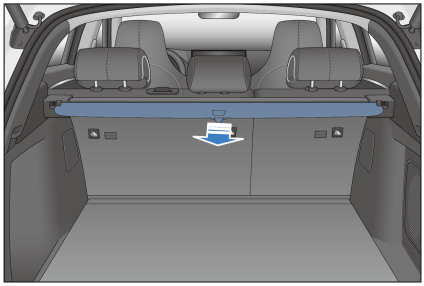
- The rear seats are equipped with top tether strap anchorages on the back.



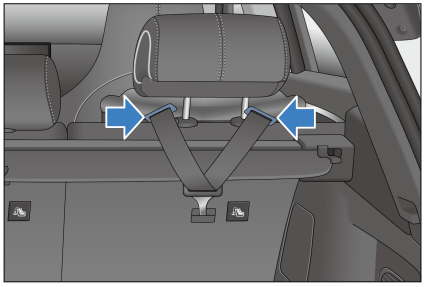
**CAUTION**

- When the child restraint is installed with a top tether on a rearoutboard seat, first remove the cargo cover, to have access to thetop tether anchorage.

- When the child restraint system is installed on any rear seat, The front seats can be adjusted forward, and the front seatback angle can be rotated, to ensure there is no contact of the front seats to the child.
- To ensure that the vehicle seatback can safely support the child restraint system, the head restraint can be adjusted or removed.
- When the child restraint is installed on the rear outboard seat with a top tether:
  - Remove the cargo cover to have access to the top tether anchorage and store the cover safely in the vehicle, and;



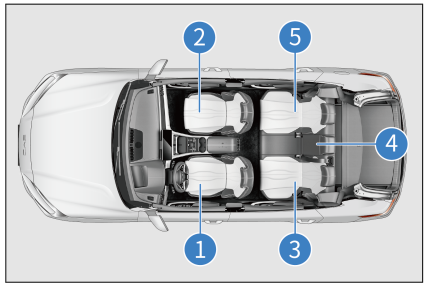
- Route it at the outside of each head restraint rod.



**WARNING**

- When a child restraint is a booster cushion only, without a seatback, the head restraint must never be removed, and must be positioned at the appropriate height.

- ① Driver seat
- ② Front passenger seat
- ③ Rear left seat
- ④ Rear center seat
- ⑤ Rear right seat




**CAUTION**

- The illustration indicates seat positions for a LHD model. For RHD model, the front seat reference positions are switched.

The following table shows the installation options for ISOFIX or i-Size child restraint system at the ISOFIX or i-Size anchorage points of the individual vehicle seating locations.

**Details on child restraint system installation locations:**

| | Seating Position | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 3 | | | | |
| | 1 | Front Passenger Airbag Activated[a]) | Front Passenger Airbag Deactivated[a]) | 4[b]) | 5[b]) | 6[b]) |
| Seating position suitable for | X | YES (Forward- | YES | YES | YES | YES |

| | Seating Position | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 3 | | | | |
| | 1 | Front Passenger Airbag Activated[a] ) | Front Passenger Airbag Deactivated [a)] | 4[b)] | 5[b)] | 6[b)] |
| Universal belted | | facing only) | | | | |
| Seating position suitable for i-Size | X | YES (Forward-facing only) | YES | YES | NO | YES |
| Largest suitable Lateral child restraint system | X | NO | NO | NO | NO | NO |
| Largest suitable Rearward child restraint system | X | NO | R1 / R2X / R2 / R3 | R1 / R2X / R2 / R3 | NO | R1 / R2X / R2 / R3 |
| Largest suitable Forward child restraint system | X | F2X / F2 / F3 | F2X / F2 / F3 | F2X / F2 / F3 | NO | F2X / F2 / F3 |
| Suitable for booster seat | X | B2 / B3 | B2 / B3 | B2 / B3 | B2 / B3 | B2 / B3 |
| Suitable for support leg | X | YES | YES | YES | YES | YES |

[a)] : The front seat must be positioned fully rearward and fully down. The front seat belt upper anchorage should be adjusted to be fully down. If necessary, to ensure the child restraint system has direct contact to the front seatback, the front seatback can be adjusted vertically and / or the head restraint adjusted or removed.

[b)]: If necessary, to ensure the child restraint system has direct contact to the rear seatback, the head restraint should be adjusted or removed.

| Seating Position | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 3 | | | | |
| 1 | Front Passenger Airbag Activated[a]) | Front Passenger Airbag Deactivated[a]) | 4[b]) | 5[b]) | 6[b]) |

X:Seat position not suitable for securing a child restraint system.

Recommended child restraint systems:
(Group and child stature according to ECE R129).

| Group | Child Stature (cm) | Manufacturer | Child Restraint System | Comment |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | < 83 | Maxi-Cosi | Pebble 360 | Belted |
| 0+/1 | 76-105 | Britax Römer | Trifix 2 i-Size | ISOFIX and belted |
| 2 | < 135 | Britax Römer | Kidfix i-Size [a)] | ISOFIX and belted |
| 3 | < 150 | Nania | Booster Basic | Belted |

[a)] Ensure:

- The lap belt is in the SecureGuard.
- The diagonal belt is not in the SecureGuard.
- The SICT element is installed correctly.

① Group 0

② Group 0+/1

③ Group 2

④ Group 3

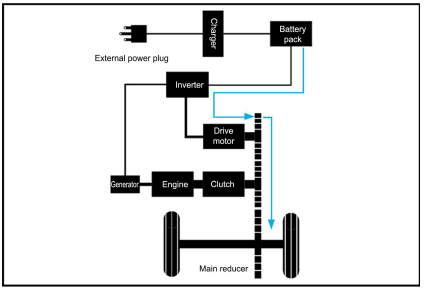



# Working Modes of Dual-Mode (DM) System

**Configuration 1 (2WD)**

**"EV" - Pure Electric Operating Mode:**

- In pure electric operating mode, the high-voltage battery provides electric energy to drive the vehicle by the electric motor, and this mode can meet a variety of operating conditions, such as starting, reversing, crawling, accelerating, and driving at a constant speed.




**REMINDER**

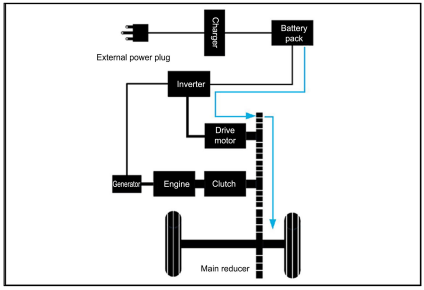
- The vehicle may switch to HEV mode automatically under

**REMINDER**

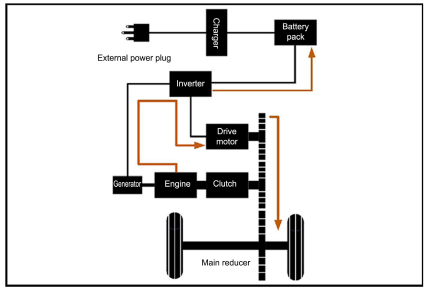
operating conditions such as rapid acceleration, high vehicle speed, grade climbing, high or low temperature, low SOC level or the need of engine maintenance. Switch to EV mode manually if needed when EV conditions are meeted. It is recommanded to choose HEV mode under high or low temperature conditions.

**"HEV" - Dual-Mode Synergy Operating Mode:**

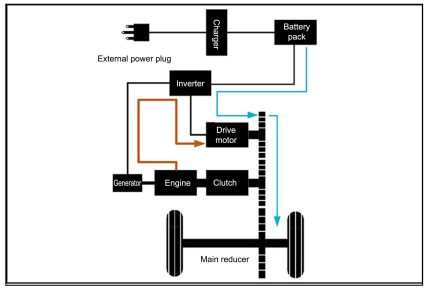
- In HEV mode, when the SOC level is high or the power demand is low, the vehicle system prioritizes EV drive, without starting the engine.



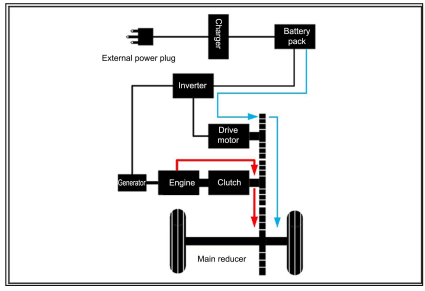

- In HEV mode, when the SOC level is low or the power demand is high, the engine starts and operates in series to meet the power demand.
  - In HEV mode, the engine supplies power to the high-voltage battery and drive motor.



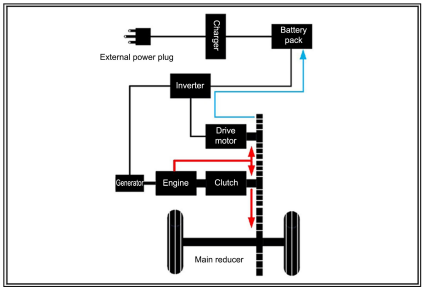

- In HEV mode, the engine and the high-voltage battery simultaneously supply power to the drive motor.



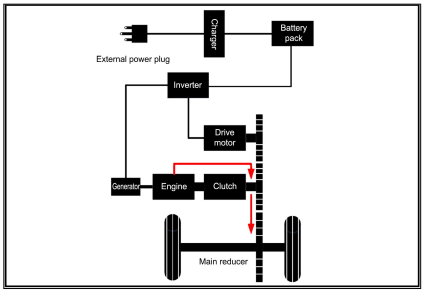

- In HEV mode, the engine starts to operate in parallel at medium and high speeds under some working conditions to improve fuel economy.
  - In HEV mode, the engine and drive motor work together to drive the vehicle.




- In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle and simultaneously drives the motor to generate electricity for energy recycling.



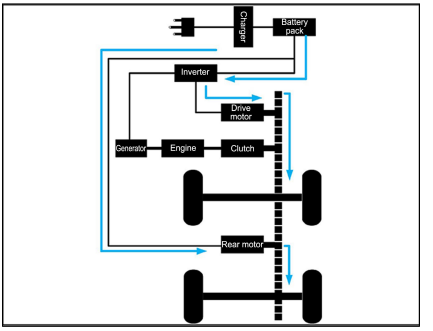

- In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle and the drive motor rests.




**Configuration 2 (4WD)**

**"EV" - Pure Electric Operating Mode:**

- In EV mode, the high-voltage battery provides electric energy to drive the vehicle by the electric motor, and this mode can meet a variety of operating conditions, such as starting, reversing, crawling, accelerating, and driving at a constant speed. According to the operating conditions, the vehicle system intelligently selects pure electric 4WD mode or pure electric front-drive mode.

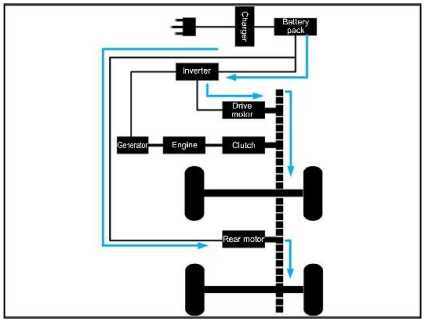



**REMINDER**

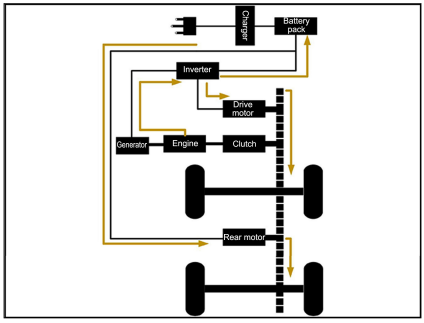
- The vehicle may switch to HEV mode automatically under operating conditions such as rapid acceleration, high vehicle speed, grade climbing, high or low temperature, low SOC level or the need of engine maintenance. Switch to EV mode manually if needed when EV conditions are meeted. It is recommanded to choose HEV mode under high or low temperature conditions.

**"HEV" - Dual-Mode Synergy Operating Mode:**

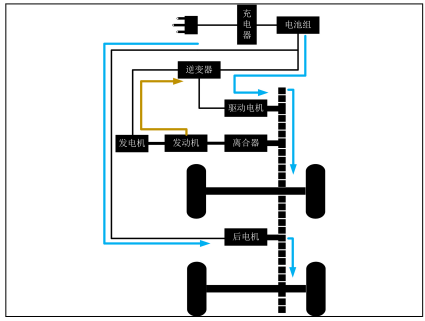
- In HEV mode, when the SOC level is high or the power demand is low, the vehicle system prioritizes EV drive, without starting the engine.
- In HEV mode, when the SOC level is low or the power demand is high, the engine starts and operates in series to meet the power demand.



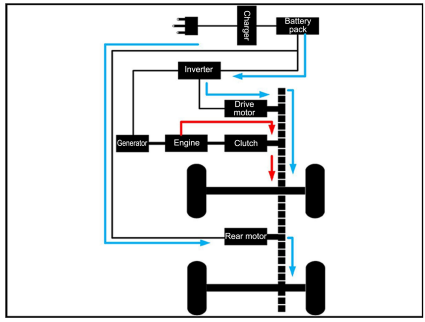

- In HEV mode, the engine supplies power to the high-voltage battery and drive motor. According to the operating conditions, the vehicle system intelligently selects 4WD mode or front-drive mode.



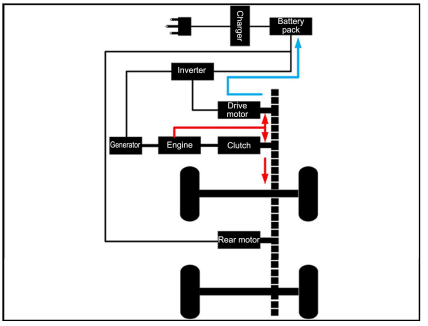

- In HEV mode, the engine and the high-voltage battery simultaneously supply power to the drive motor. According to the operating conditions, the vehicle system intelligently selects 4WD mode in series or front-drive mode in series.



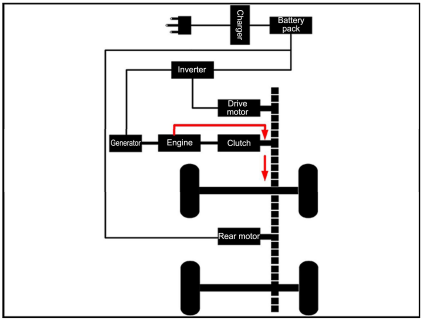

- In HEV mode, the engine starts to operate in parallel at medium and high speeds under some working conditions to improve fuel economy.
- In HEV mode, the engine and drive motor work together to drive the vehicle. According to the operating conditions, the vehicle system intelligently selects 4WD mode in parallel or front-drive mode in parallel.




- In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle and simultaneously drives the motor to generate electricity for energy recycling. According to the operating conditions, the vehicle system intelligently selects the front motor, rear motor, or both for power generation.




- In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle and the drive motor rests.



**Configuration 1 (2WD)**




① EV/HEV mode

- Pull the lever forward to trigger EV mode
- and backward to trigger HEV mode.

② MODE mode

- Toggle the "MODE" lever forward to switch between ECO→snow mode→SPORT→NORMAL.
- Pull the "MODE" lever backward to switch between ECO→NORMAL→SPORT→snow mode.

**EV-ECO Drive Mode:**

- Toggle the EV/HEV switch forward, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in the EV mode. Toggle the MODE lever continuously until the ECO indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to ECO mode to minimize power consumption.

**EV-NORMAL Drive Mode:**

- Toggle the EV/HEV switch forward, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in the EV mode. Toggle the MODE lever continuously until the NORMAL indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to NORMAL mode to ensure ride comfort and control power consumption.

**EV-SPORT Drive Mode:**

- Toggle the EV/HEV switch forward, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in the EV mode. Toggle the MODE lever continuously until the SPORT indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to Sport(SPORT )mode to ensure the best power performance.

**HEV-ECO Drive Mode:**

- Toggle the EV/HEV switch backward, and the HEV indicator on the

instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in the HEV mode. Toggle the MODE lever continuously until the ECO indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to ECO mode for the best fuel economy.

**HEV-NORMAL Drive Mode:**

- Toggle the EV/HEV switch backward, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in the HEV mode. Toggle the MODE lever continuously until the NORMAL indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to Normal(NORMAL)mode to ensure ride comfort and fuel economy.

**HEV-SPORT Drive Mode:**

- Toggle the EV/HEV switch backward, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in the HEV mode. Toggle the MODE lever continuously until the SPORT indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to SPORT mode to ensure the best power performance.

**MAX EV Drive Mode:**

- This mode ensures vehicle operation in EV mode only to the greatest extent. To switch the vehicle to the MAX EV mode with sufficient battery SOC, toggle the EV/HEV switch forward and hold for 3s until the EV indicator on the instrument cluster turns blue. At this time, the output power of the vehicle is limited to some extent. When the battery SOC drops to a lower level, the vehicle automatically switches to the HEV-ECO mode.

**Snow Mode**

- Toggle the MODE lever continuously until the Snow Mode indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to Snow Mode to drive on the wet roads including snow roads.

**Configuration 2 (4WD)**




① EV/HEV mode

- Pull the lever forward to trigger EV mode
- and backward to trigger HEV mode.

② MODE mode

- Toggle the "MODE" lever forward to switch between mud/rut mode→ sand mode→snow/gravel/grassland mode→SPORT→NORMAL→ECO.
- Toggle the "MODE" lever backward to switch between →snow/gravel/grassland mode→ sand mode→mud/rut mode→ECO→NORMAL→SPORT.

**EV-ECO Drive Mode:**

- Toggle the EV/HEV lever forward, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in the EV mode. Toggle the MODE lever continuously until the ECO indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to ECO mode to minimize power consumption.

**EV-NORMAL Drive Mode:**

- Toggle the EV/HEV lever forward, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in the EV mode. Toggle the MODE lever continuously until the NORMAL indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to NORMAL mode to ensure ride comfort and control power consumption.

**EV-SPORT Drive Mode:**

- Toggle the EV/HEV lever forward, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in the EV mode. Toggle the MODE lever continuously until the SPORT indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to Sport(SPORT )mode to ensure the best power performance.

**HEV-ECO Drive Mode:**

- Toggle the EV/HEV lever backward, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in the HEV mode. Toggle the MODE lever continuously until the ECO indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to ECO mode for the best fuel economy.

**HEV-NORMAL Drive Mode:**

- Toggle the EV/HEV lever backward, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in the HEV mode. Toggle the MODE lever continuously until the NORMAL indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to Normal(NORMAL)mode to ensure ride comfort and fuel economy.

**HEV-SPORT Drive Mode:**

- Toggle the EV/HEV lever backward, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in the HEV mode. Toggle the MODE lever continuously until the SPORT indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to SPORT mode to ensure the best power performance.

**MAX EV Drive Mode:**

- This mode ensures vehicle operation in EV mode only to the greatest extent. To switch the vehicle to the MAX EV mode with sufficient battery SOC, toggle the EV/HEV switch forward and hold for 3s until the EV indicator on the instrument cluster turns blue. At this time, the output power of the vehicle is limited to some extent. When the battery SOC drops to a lower level, the vehicle automatically switches to the HEV-ECO mode.

**Sand Mode**

- Toggle the MODE lever continuously until the sand mode indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to sand mode.
  - This mode is recommended for soft, dry, and easily pressed ground. (Deserts, beaches, sand dunes, shorelines, etc.)
  - This mode is also recommended for driving on the surfaces of thick gravel.

**Snow/Gravel/Grass Mode**

- Toggle the MODE lever continuously until the Snow/Gravel/Grass Mode indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to Snow/Gravel/Grass Mode.
  - This mode is recommended for firm roads covered with a layer of loose and slippery substances such as grass, snow, ice, or gravel.
  - To improve drivability, handling, and vehicle stability on slippery roads, avoid pressing hard the accelerator pedal frequently.

**Mud/Rut Mode**

- Toggle the MODE lever continuously until the Mud/Rut Mode indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to Mud/Rut Mode.
  - This mode is recommended for muddy, rutted, soft, or uneven road surfaces.

**CAUTION**

- If the vehicle is to pass an area of wet sand and the sand layer is thick enough to trap the wheel, the mud/rut mode should be selected.

**CAUTION**

- The sand mode is recommended for road with a thick gravel layer.
- If the vehicle performance decreases due to the activation of dynamic stability control in soft sand, snow/gravel/grassland conditions, turning off the ESC system is conducive to improving the vehicle performance. When the difficulty is overcome, the ESC system must be restarted Function.

**When the vehicle operates in hybrid synergy mode, pay attention to the following:**

- The performance of the high-voltage battery degrades in high- and low-temperature environments. To prevent the high-voltage battery from being damaged, the following protection mechanisms are set:
  - When the temperature is too high or too low, the vehicle system limits the charging and discharging power and SOC level.
  - When the temperature is lower than -30°C or higher than 60°C, the battery cannot be charged.
  - When the temperature is lower than -35°C or higher than 60°C, the battery cannot be charged.
- It is recommended to use the vehicle in an environment above -20°C. In the event of the above special circumstances, it is recommended to drive thevehicle by using the engine.
- The optimum temperature of the battery is 25°C. When the temperature is too high or too low, the output power of the battery is limited, so the driving range of the vehicle in pure electric mode is shortened.

**Attention to High-voltage and Hightemperature Components**

- The high-voltage battery and other high-voltage components of the vehicle are connected by orange cables.

**WARNING**

- Do not touch the orange cable or the power battery electrode. Electric shock may cause serious or even life-threatening injuries.
- Please read all warning labels.

- The motor, coolant radiator, and some other components may reach high temperatures during driving. These parts are attached warning labels. Please carefully read and follow the instructions on these warning labels.

**WARNING**

- Do not remove or disassemble any high-voltage parts, otherwise serious or even life-threatening injuries may be caused.
- In the event of collision, flooding, and other situations that may cause damage to the high-voltage system, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider as soon as possible for inspection to avoid the risk of electric shock.
- Do not continue to use the vehicle to avoid the risk of electric shock if the vehicle gives a warning of electric leakage or a BYD authorized dealer or service provider has diagnosed that the vehicle has electric leakage.
- Touching parts with high voltage causes electric shock, thus

**WARNING**

resulting in serious or even life-threatening injuries.

- For the vehicle is driven by gasoline engine and motor, the engine sound may be heard from the engine compartment.
- When the vehicle powered on or off, it may hear the sound (sound of contactor closing or opening) from high-voltage components under the auxiliary dashboard, which is not a fault.
- If the indicator " OK " stays on, it indicates that the vehicle can be driven, even if the fuel engine is not started (driven by the motor only).
- Be sure to press the "P" button when parking. When "P" or "N" gear is engaged, if the SOC is lower than a certain level, the engine maystart to charge the high-voltage battery. If the "N" , "R" , or "D" gear is engaged for a long period of time, it may cause a system failure. Therefore, after the gear is engaged, be sure torelease the shift lever. When leaving the vehicle, be sure to pull up the EPB switch, press the "P" button, take away the key, and lock all doors.
- If the 12V battery fails and the power is completely exhausted, even the external power supply cannot be used for starts, please contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

**WARNING**

- Be sure to turn off the powertrain when leaving the vehicle.
- Be sure to press the P button, because the vehicle can also be started (driven by the motor)

**WARNING**

when the " OK " indicator is on, even if the engine is shut down.

- With the " OK " indicator on, if the gearshift lever is shifted to the "R" or "D" position, when the brake pedal is not depressed, the vehicle will travel at a low speed. Be sure to pay attention to this situation.

- It is recommended to consult a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle repair or maintenance.
- If the vehicle cannot be repaired due to an accidentor other reasons, consult a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- It is recommended to consult a BYD authorized dealer or service provider before handling the vehicle because it uses a sealed 12V battery.

**WARNING**

- In the event of an accident, perform the following operations to reduce the risk of high-voltage electric leakage.
  - Move the vehicle to a safe place.
  - Press the brake pedal and pull up the EPB switch.
  - Press the P button to shut down the dual-mode system.
- If the vehicle is severely damaged, there may be a risk of electric shock. To avoid electric shock, do not touch any high-voltage components (such as battery assembly) or cables (in orange) connecting components. If there are uninsulated wires inside or

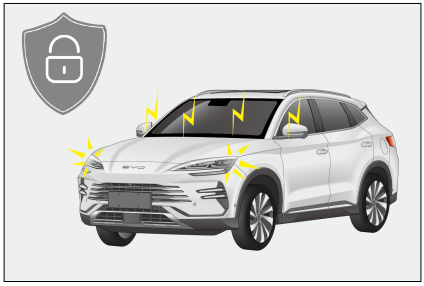
**WARNING**

outside the vehicle, do not touch them to avoid electric shock.

- If the liquid leaks into some parts of the vehicle, do not touch the liquid, because it may be the electrolyte of the 12V battery. If the fluid contacts the skin or eyes, flush with plenty of water (preferably boric acid solution) and seek medical attention to avoid severe injury.
- If the vehicle catches fire, use a special fire extinguisher to put out the fire or wait for the arrival of firefighters.
- If the vehicle needs to be towed, please tow it with all four wheels off the ground. If the wheels touch the ground during towing, the motor may continue to generate electricity, resulting in electric leakage.

# Anti-theft System

If the vehicle is in anti-theft state and any door is opened, the system will sound an alarm and the turn signals will flash to prevent the vehicle from being stolen.



**Enabling anti-theft system**

1. Power off the vehicle.
2. Have all occupants exit the vehicle.
3. Lock all doors. The anti-theft indicator remains on for 10s until the anti-theft system is automatically activated. After that, the anti-theft indicator starts flashing.
4. Before leaving, confirm this indicator is flashing. Make sure no passengers are in the vehicle while setting the alarm. Unlocking any door from the inside can activate the system.

**Triggering the alarm**

- The system will raise an alarm in any of the following situations:
  - Any door, boot, or bonnet is opened without using the keyless access function of the smart key.
  - The vehicle is powered on without using the smart key start function.

**Disarming the system**

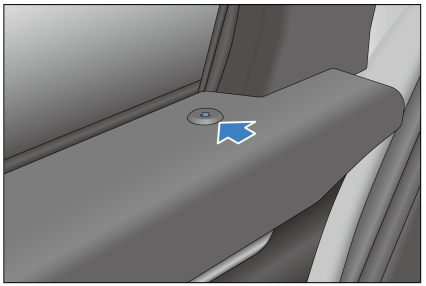
- The anti-theft alarm is released when:
  - doors are unlocked with the smart key;
  - a door is unlocked with the microswitch;
  - the trunk lid is opened remotely with the smart key;
  - the vehicle is started remotely with the smart key; or
  - Pressing the START/STOP button inside the vehicle while carrying a valid smart key.

**WARNING**

- Do not modify the anti-theft system by means of alteration or addition. Otherwise, the system may fail.

**Anti-theft Indicator**

When the anti-theft system is enabled, the anti-theft indicator is solid on for ten seconds.



# Data Collection and Processing

- This section provides you with some important information on how personal data is collected and processed when you use a BYD vehicle.
- For a more detailed overview on data processing, data protection and data subject rights, please read the current version of the privacy policy for the vehicle available at the infotainment system (Vehicle Settings → System Settings → More → Privacy Policy).
- This vehicle is equipped with an event data recording (EDR) system. EDR mainly records data in the event of a crash or near-crash (for example, airbag deployment or hitting on a roadside obstacle) to help comprehend the vehicle system operation, such as:
  - Vehicle velocity
  - Tyre pressure condition
  - Adaptive cruise control (ACC) system status
  - Whether the seat belt is fastened
- The vehicle records EDR data only when there is a crash or when a near-crash event reaches a certain extent. The EDR does not record any data during the normal driving of the vehicle.
  - The data recorded by the EDR system provides an understanding of the state of the vehicle's safety-related systems when an accident occurs, so that relevant parties can analyse the accident.
  - The EDR data needs to be accessed and read by special equipment. BYD discloses your personal data to third parties only if this is legally permissible or you have consented to it. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third-party agencies with professional equipment (such as government agencies) can also read the EDR data if they have access to the vehicle EDR and equipment (for example, they can read the data of SRS control unit to clarify the accident).

## Vehicle Data Processing

- Data is collected when the vehicle is used, such as data collected or transmitted by vehicle sensors or control units, which is necessary for the safe functioning of your vehicle.
- In some cases, the data is used to support driving (driver assistance systems) or to enable a specific comfort or infotainment function.
- Personal data that is collected and processed mainly include in-vehicle data, remote-services-related data, and other data, as further specified below.

**In-vehicle data**

Operation data

- When the vehicle is used, various vehicle status data (e.g., speed, battery level, and braking system) or environment (e.g., distance sensors, rain sensor, and temperature) data is collected and processed.
- This data is not usually stored, but there are control units, sensors or other components installed in the vehicle that record such data, for example, to record maintenance requirements, error messages, or other information.
- The in-vehicle data will only be stored in the equipment in the vehicle but can be read out via the legally required OBD ("On Board Diagnostics") interface, for example, by BYD authorized dealer or service provider or other third parties.
- In case this access takes place during vehicle maintenance, the information can also be transmitted to BYD engineers for quality assurance, product defect reports, or customer claim verification.

**Remote-services-related data**

Remote monitoring services

- The vehicle is equipped remote monitoring services such as remote diagnosis and over-the-air (OTA) updates and upgrades for security and safety purposes (subject to owner's approval).
- These monitoring services serve the following purposes: service provision (remote support/diagnostics), product development, and security/public safety.
- Depending on the country and setup, various vehicle information can be transmitted to BYD's data center in corresponding market for the above purposes, including vehicle location information, vehicle status, such as energy consumption, vehicle speed, gear position, power mode, ESC status, steering system status, battery status, powertrain status, and overall vehicle performance status.

**Others**

Infotainment system

- Depending on vehicle configuration, data can be added to the infotainment system by the users themselves, such as media data for playing video on the infotainment system, address data for use in the navigation system, or data for use in online services.
- Depending on vehicle configuration, individual settings in and on the vehicle can also be entered.
- Data stored in the vehicle can be deleted at any time.
- BYD has no control over data transferred to third parties (from the use of third party content, in particular as part of online services).

Integration of mobile devices

- Depending on vehicle configurations, mobile devices can be connected and controlled through the vehicle's infotainment system.
- It may be necessary that the device's screen or audio is displayed/played through the infotainment system or transmitted to it.
- Additional data like positioning or vehicle information can be transmitted through applications for use in certain navigation systems, communication, or other third-party services.
- The specific type of data processing depends on the respective function and is controlled by the user or third parties such as the provider of the devices or corresponding services.

Internet access and connected services

- Depending on vehicle configurations, the Internet can be accessed for certain functions or BYD Europe services through the vehicle's infotainment system network devices.
- BYD is not liable for any such services provided by any other party.
- In such cases, please obtain information about the use of data from the provider of the respective online service.

Camera image recording/surrounding area monitoring

- Your vehicle is equipped with a number of cameras/sensors.
- The reason for this is that some vehicle functionalities require the vehicle's path to be detected and assessed which is done by cameras that detect objects in the vehicle's surroundings (e.g., obstacles).
- The images are transmitted to the respective control module for further analytics required to operate the systems.
- Some images are just processed on a volatile basis (RAM), others may be stored, depending on vehicle equipment.
- The vehicle may be equipped with an outward-facing camera (OFC) that can be used to take footage of the surrounding (dashcam).
- The vehicle may also be equipped with an inward-facing camera (IFC), which can be used to take footage inside the vehicle.
- Both OFC and IFC footage is stored.
- It is your responsibility to check the local legal requirements before turning on OFC or IFC (for example, the IFC use license should be acquired first in some countries or the use of dashcam OFC has severe restrictions in other countries).
- For more camera details, see section "Panoramic View System" in this manual.

## Permanent Vehicle Transfer to Third Parties and Offline Mode

- In case of a permanent vehicle transfer, i.e., second hand vehicle, or vehicle transfer by a third party for permanent use, it must be noted that any personalisation/user settings made via the infotainment system (e.g. address list, navigation system, etc.) may be accessed by the new owner.
- You can also restrict your vehicle's communication with the BYD data server and the processing of vehicle-related and personal data by setting the vehicle to offline mode.
- Tap PAD  to turn Wi-Fi off.
- This can also be done by tapping  → **System Settings** → **Internet** → **WLAN** → **Off**.

## Disclosure of Personal Data to Authorities

- BYD discloses your personal data to third parties only when this is legally permissible or you have consented to it.
- However, according to applicable laws, government agencies may be authorized to read data from the vehicle (e.g., data can be read from an airbag control unit to clarify an incident).

- BYD may also be obliged to disclose data to government authorities in your country upon request if required by law, for example in the case of a criminal investigation.

## Your Data Protection Rights

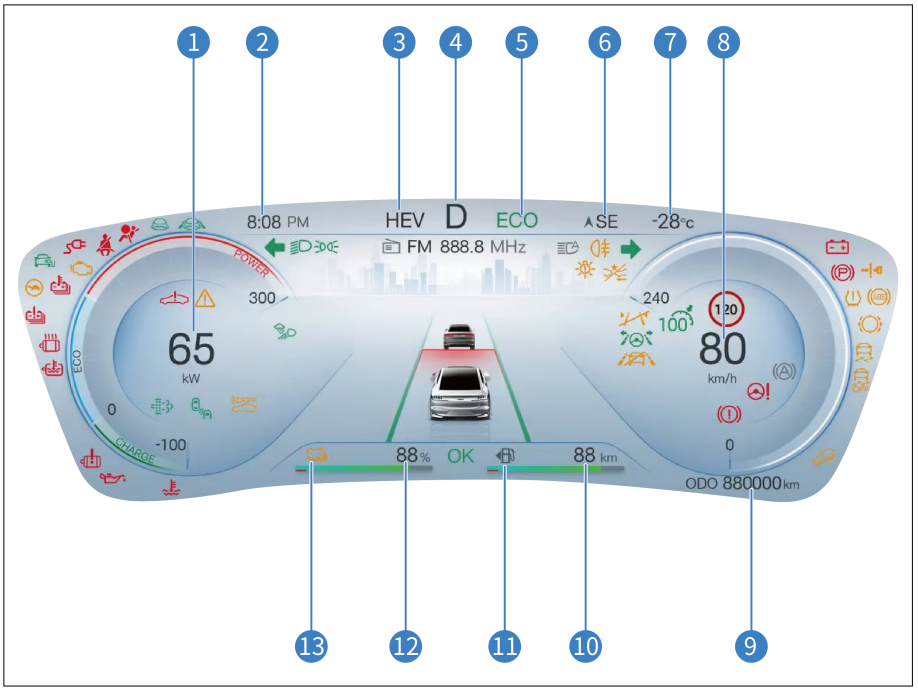
- BYD has staunch respect for its customer's privacy, and strictly complies with all data protection laws, in particular the General Data Protection Regulation (GDPR) and applicable local laws.
- According to these laws, owners have specific rights when their personal data is processed:
  - Data subjects have the right of information and access, to rectification, erasure of personal data ("right to be forgotten") and the right to object to the processing of personal data or to restrict it (or to withdraw consent given earlier, as well as the right to data portability).
- These rights may be limited in some cases. For example, if we can show that we have a legal obligation to process your data, or if providing the information to you would disclose personal data about another person, or if we are legally prevented from disclosing that information.
- In some cases, this may mean that we can retain the data even if you withdraw your consent.
- For more information on data processing, data protection, and any rights you may have, please visit the latest version of the Privacy Policy available at the infotainment system (Vehicle Settings → System Settings → More → Privacy Policy).

# 02 INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

Instrument Cluster.....48

# Instrument Cluster

## View of Instrument Cluster




| | |
|---|---|
| 1 | Power |
| 2 | Time |
| 3 | Working Modes of Dual-Mode (DM) |
| 4 | Gear status |
| 5 | ECO/SPORT/NORMAL/Snow/ Sand/Mud Mode |
| 6 | Orientation |
| 7 | Ambient temperature |
| 8 | Speedometer |
| 9 | Odometer |
| 10 | Fuel driving range |
| 11 | Fuel gauge |
| 12 | Battery SOC percentage (battery driving range) |
| 13 | State of Charge (SOC) meter |

**REMINDER**

The above views are schematic diagrams for reference only. The battery SOC percentage and battery driving range in the diagrams cannot be displayed simultaneously.
In addition, the user can access the energy display settings through multimedia system →New Energy to

**REMINDER**

select the display of "Mileage" and "SOC".

## Instrument Cluster Indicators

**Indicators and Warning Lights**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Turn signal indicator | | Position light indicator |
| | Discharge indicator | | ICC indicator* |
| | Hill descend control indicator | | AEB indicator* |
| | AVH indicator | OK | OK indicator |
| ECO | ECO indicator | | Low Beam Indicator |
| SPORT | SPORT indicator | | Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC indicator) * |
| NORMAL | NORMAL indicator | | BSD indicator* |
| EV | EV Indicator | HEV | HEV Indicator |
| | HMA indicator* | | High beam indicator |
| | Low fuel warning light | | ACC fault indicator* |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
|  | AEB fault warning light* |  | Snow mode indicator |
|  | Rear fog light indicator |  | Headlight fault warning light |
|  | ESC warning light |  | Driving power limit indicator |
|  | Tyre pressure fault warning light |  | Smart key warning light |
|  | Main alarm indicator |  | High-voltage battery low SOC warning light |
|  | Emission fault indicator |  | Oil life monitoring indicator* |
|  | Hill descend control fault indicator* |  | Driver attention warning light |
|  | ABS fault warning light |  | ESC OFF warning light |
|  | CPD fault indicator |  | Door status indicator |
|  | Seat belt reminder |  | EPB indicator |
|  | Charging connection indicator |  | SRS fault warning light |
|  | Parking system fault warning light |  | Powertrain fault warning light |
|  | High-voltage battery fault warning light |  | High-voltage battery overheating warning light |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
|  | Motor overheating warning light |  | Towing mode indicator |
|  | Steering system fault warning light |  | Motor coolant overheating indicator |
|  | TSR indicator* |  | Low oil pressure warning light |
|  | Motor fault warning light* |  | Low-voltage power system warning light |
|  | Engine coolant overheating indicator |  | Mud/Rut Mode indicator |
|  | Sand Mode Indicator |  | GPF green regeneration indicator light |
|  | GPF yellow regeneration indicator light | | |

**Description of instrument cluster fault/ prompt indicator**

 Smart key warning light

- Press the START/STOP button. If the key is not inside the vehicle, the warning light lights up for several seconds, the speaker sounds once, and the display screen displays "No key is detected. Please confirm whether it is inside the vehicle" .
- If the START/STOP button is pressed with the key inside the vehicle, this warning light does not light up, and the vehicle can be powered on.
- If the warning light flashes when the START/STOP button is pressed, it indicates low battery of the key.

 ABS fault warning light

- With the vehicle powered ON, this warning light is on. If the ABS (anti-lock braking system) works properly, the light goes off in a few seconds. If the system fails, it lights up again until the fault is eliminated.
- When the ABS fault warning light is on (the parking system fault warning light goes out), the ABS does not work, but the parking system still works normally.
- When the ABS fault warning light is on (with the parking system fault warning light off), since the anti-lock braking system does not operate, the wheels will be locked in case of emergency braking or braking on a slippery road.

- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - With the vehicle powered on, this warning light does not light up or stays on.
  - This warning light turns on during driving.

**REMINDER**

- Momentary illumination of this warning light during operation does not indicate a problem.
- If the parking system fault warning light and ABS fault warning light go on at the same time, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. Because if the brake operation is performed at this time, not only the ABS does not work, but the vehicle also becomes extremely unstable.

- If both ABS indicator and the braking system indicator are on and the electronic parking brake (EPB) is fully released, the braking force distribution system of front and rear wheels has also failed.



Tire pressure fault warning light

- With the vehicle powered ON, this warning light is on. It turns off in a few seconds if the tire pressure monitoring system is working properly. If the system fails, this warning light turns on again.
- When the tire pressure fault warning light lights up or flashes, the information display on the instrument cluster reads "Please check the tire pressure monitoring system" and the tire pressure is displayed as "---" on the screen, it indicates that the tire pressure system is faulty.
- When the tire pressure fault warning light flashes rapidly, and one or more values turn red in the tire pressure page on the instrument cluster information display, the corresponding tire is leaking rapidly.
- When this indicator stays on, along with one or more figures shown on the tire pressure display interface of the dashboard display screen turning yellow, it indicates low pressure in one or more tires.

In any of the above cases, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.



ESC warning light

- With the vehicle powered ON, this warning light is on. If ESC system works properly, this warning light turns off after a few seconds. If the system fails, this warning light turns on again until the system fault is eliminated.
- If the ESC fault warning light flashes while the vehicle is traveling, it indicates that the ESC is working.
- When the ESC fault warning light goes on (the ABS fault warning light and the parking system fault warning light go out), the ESC system fails, but the ABS and the braking system still work normally.
- When the ESC fault warning light goes on (the ABS fault warning light and the parking system fault warning light go out), the vehicle is extremely unstable during emergency

turning and emergency avoidance from obstacles ahead due to the failure of the ESC system.

- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible:
  - With the vehicle powered on, this warning light does not light up or stays on.
  - This warning light stays on during driving.
  - If the ESC fault warning light flashes while the vehicle is traveling, it indicates that the ESC is working.

**REMINDER**

- Momentary illumination of this warning light during operation does not indicate a problem.
- If the ESC warning light is still on while the ABS fault warning light and braking system warning light are on, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. Because the vehicle becomes extremely unstable when braking and the ABS does not work.




ESC OFF warning light

- When the "ESC OFF" button is pressed, the light should illuminate and stay on and the ESC system would not work. When the "ESC OFF" switch is pressed again, it shall go out, and the ESC system functions normally.

**CAUTION**

- If the ESC OFF warning light is on, the driver must be alert and keep driving at a low speed during emergency turning and emergency avoidance from obstacles ahead. Because braking the vehicle in such a situation may cause the ESC system to malfunction, and the vehicle would become unstable.



Main alarm indicator

If this indicator is on, it indicates that there is a fault prompt or warning information in the information display area.



Headlight fault warning light

When the warning light is yellow, it indicates that the headlight is faulty. In this case, drive the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.



Driving power limit warning light

If this indicator illuminates when the vehicle power is limited, contact a BYD authorized service provider in time.



Emission fault indicator

- With the vehicle powered ON, this fault indicator is on for self-check. If on at any other time, it indicates that a certain control system of the vehicle may be faulty. Even though abnormalities in vehicle performance may not be noticed, continuous operation in this state may cause serious damage to the vehicle.

- If this indicator lights up during non-self-check, drive the vehicle to the roadside safely, power the vehicle off, power it on again, start the engine and check this warning light. If this warning light is still on, drive the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible. Before the BYD authorized dealer or service provider finds out the fault, be careful to drive the vehicle and avoid driving at a high speed or fully pressing the accelerator pedal.
- If the fault indicator lights up frequently, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection, even if it goes out after the above steps are followed.

**CAUTION**

- Continuous driving after the emission fault indicator is on may cause damage to the emission control system or the engine itself.



Low fuel warning light

This indicator is located on the fuel gauge. If on, it indicates little fuel in the fuel tank and reminds the driver that the fuel is about to be used up. Should this occur, refuel the vehicle as soon as possible. When the fuel tank shakes on a slope or curve, the low fuel level warning light may be on earlier than usual.



Parking system fault warning light

- This warning light will illuminate when the brake fluid level is low or the braking system becomes faulty.
- In any of the following cases, park the vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- This warning light illuminates when the brake fluid level is low with the power ON.

**REMINDER**

- When the brake fluid level is low, do not drive the vehicle continuously because it is very dangerous.

- When the motor is running, this warning light stays on if the brake fluid level is normal and the EPB system works normally (the EPB switch is pulled up and released normally, and there is no prompt of "Please check the EPB system").
- The parking system fault warning light and ABS fault warning light go on at the same time.

**REMINDER**

- Momentary illumination of this warning light during operation does not indicate a problem.



Seat belt reminder

With the power ON, if any seat belt is not fastened, the seat belt indicator lights up. Unless the seat belt is fastened, the indicator stays on.



Low-voltage power system warning light

- This indicator is used to warn charging system fault during charging.
- This indicator is used to warn discharging system fault during discharging.
- This indicator is used to warn the working status of DC module and

battery module at times other than charging and discharging.

- If this indicator is on during driving, it indicates faulty DC system or battery system. In this case, turn off the A/C and fan, and drive the vehicle to the nearest BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.


SRS fault warning light

- With the vehicle powered on, this warning light is on. If the airbag system works normally, it goes out after a few seconds. This warning light is used to monitor the SRS ECU, collision sensor, inflator, warning light, wiring and power supply.
- If any of the following conditions occurs, it indicates a fault in a component monitored by the warning light system. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible:
  - With the vehicle powered on, this warning light does not light up or stays on.
  - This warning light turns on during driving.


Motor coolant overheating indicator

If this warning light keeps lighting up, it indicates motor coolant over temperature. In this case, stop the vehicle in order to cool down.


Steering system fault warning light

- When the warning light stays on, it indicates that the steering system is faulty. In this case, drive the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.

**REMINDER**

- A motor is used in the steering system to reduce the force required to turn the steering wheel.
- When turning the steering wheel, you may hear the motor humming when it is working. This does not indicate a failure.
- The duration of turning the steering wheel to the limit position does not exceed 5s. Otherwise, the temperature protection is activated, resulting in heavy steering or damage.

- When the steering wheel is turned frequently in situ for a long time, the steering system fault warning light does not go on, but it feels hard to turn. This phenomenon is a non-failure mode.
  - If the steering wheel is turned frequently in place for a long time, the steering system boosting effect will decrease to prevent over temperature of the system, resulting in heavy steering when operating the steering wheel. In this case, avoid frequently turning the steering wheel or stopping the vehicle; the system will return to normal in 10 min.

**WARNING**

- If the steering system fault warning light goes on, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.


Powertrain fault warning light

- If the powertrain is faulty, this warning light goes on.

- If any of the following conditions occurs, it indicates a fault in a component monitored by the warning light system. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible:
  - With the vehicle powered on, this warning light stays on.
  - This warning light turns on during driving.

**CAUTION**

- Momentary illumination of this warning light during operation does not indicate a problem.
- If the warning light is on, try not to drive the vehicle, but contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for troubleshooting as soon as possible.



High-voltage battery overheating warning light

- If this indicator is on, it indicates that the high-voltage battery is too hot. Should this occur, stop the vehicle immediately to let it cool down. If the indicator flashes, stop the vehicle immediately and leave it as soon as possible.
- The high-voltage battery may be overheated under the following operating conditions. For example:
  - Long-distance climbing in hot weather.
  - Long stop-and-go traffic state, frequent rapid acceleration and braking, or continuous running without rest.



High-voltage battery fault warning light

- When the vehicle is powered ON, this warning light will illuminate. If the power battery system works properly, it goes out after a few seconds. If the system is faulty, it goes on again. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - With the vehicle powered on, this warning light stays on.
  - This indicator stays on or lights up from time to time during driving.



Motor overheating warning light

If this indicator is on, it indicates that the motor is too hot. Should this occur, stop the vehicle immediately to let it cool down.



Low oil pressure warning light

- This warning light is on in case of low oil pressure.
- If this warning light flashes or remains on during driving, park the vehicle in a safe place, shut down the engine immediately, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for help.

**CAUTION**

- Do not drive the vehicle when the warning light is on, even for a short distance. Otherwise, the engine is damaged.
- When the engine is idling, this warning light may

**CAUTION**

flash occasionally, or go on momentarily after emergency braking. When the engine is accelerating gradually, if this indicator goes out, the oil pressure is normal, which does not indicate a problem.




Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)*

If this indicator lights up, it indicates that the system recognizes the speed limit of the current road section.



AEB indicator* (red)

When this indicator is on or flashes, pay attention to the distance to the vehicle ahead to avoid collision.



Door status indicator

If a door, the boot lid or the hood is not closed, the vehicle body and corresponding status prompt are displayed. When the vehicle speed exceeds a certain value, the message "Door, boot lid or hood is not closed." is displayed.



/GPF regeneration indicator light

Gasoline Particulate Filter (GPF) is installed in the exhaust system of vehicles to capture tiny carbon particles in the exhaust gas, thus reducing air pollution. During the use of vehicles, the accumulated carbon and ash of GPF will accumulate continuously, which will lead to the gradual increase of the back pressure of GPF. If it is not cleaned in time, it will lead to GPF blockage, which will affect the power performance and fuel consumption of vehicles. Therefore, after the carbon particles in the Gasoline Particulate Filter (GPF) reach a certain limit, it is necessary to regenerate the GPF by increasing the exhaust temperature and increasing the oxygen content, so as to realize the continuous, efficient and safe operation of the GPF. The regeneration reminders you may perceive are mainly in the following ways:

1. If the GPF green regeneration indicator light  in the instrument lights up, it indicates that the carbon particles trapped by the Gasoline Particulate Filter (GPF) have reached the level that needs regeneration, which is not a fault. After regeneration, the carbon particles in the GPF will be burned off and the light will go out by itself.
2. If the instrument prompts the words "GPF needs regeneration, please run at high speed", please run at high speed as required to make GPF regenerate smoothly.
3. If the instrument prompts the words like "GPF needs to be regenerated, please go to the 4S shop to clean it up", please go to the nearest 4S shop as soon as possible to deal with it as required to prevent GPF from being blocked.
4. If the GPF yellow regeneration indicator light  in the instrument lights up, it indicates that the Gasoline Particulate Filter (GPF) is seriously blocked and is not suitable for further driving, it is necessary to contact the dealer immediately and follow the instructions of professionals.

The regeneration process is that the particles in GPF are treated irregularly to make it return to normal working state.

**WARNING**

- If you find that the yellow GPF indicator light in the instrument is on, please contact the dealer in time for treatment. If it is not handled in time, it may cause irrecoverable damage to the particle trap (GPF).

**REMINDER**

- In order to ensure the effect of particle trapping, all engines equipped with GPF need to use low ash oil to ensure that GPF can work normally for a long time. It is recommended to use the engine oil and fuel recommended by our company and carry out regular maintenance to reduce GPF ash content and carbon accumulation rate;
- If the engine works in bad working conditions for a long time, the particulate matter in the Gasoline Particulate Filter (GPF) will increase rapidly. It is recommended that you try to avoid the vehicle working under this working condition for a long time. The following are considered to be more severe working conditions:
  - Often drive at low speed for short distance.
  - The engine often starts cold at low temperature.
- If you find that the GPF green light  in the instrument is always on, this is not a fault. Please don't worry and keep driving normally. If conditions permit, it is recommended that you drive stably at medium and high speed

**REMINDER**

for a certain distance. After the GPF is regenerated, the light will go out by itself.

# 03 CONTROLLER OPERATION

Doors and Keys..... 60
Seats..... 73
Steering Wheel..... 78
Switches..... 79

# Doors and Keys

## Keys

The vehicle is equipped with an electronic intelligent key, NFC key and a mechanical key (in the intelligent key) that allow you to unlock/lock vehicle doors, start the vehicle and implement other functions.

**Electronic Smart Key**

This key features various functions, including smart start-up, remote boot lid control, smart access, start-up in no-power mode, remote vehicle locating, and low SOC reminder.



Lock/Unlock all doors by pressing the front left/right door microswitch while carrying the electronic smart key. Buttons on the intelligent key help you lock/unlock doors, open the boot lid, perform a remote start, and locate your vehicle.

When the electronic smart key stands for more than 1min, the smart key actively enters the sleep state. At this time, the functions of the microswitch such as unlocking or starting the vehicle fail to prevent others from using relay attacks to enter or start the vehicle; Moving the smart key again or pressing the key button can release the sleep state and the vehicle function returns to normal.

Model: D0-92/D1-92

Operating power supply: button cell battery

Battery Model: CR2032

Nominal voltage: 3V

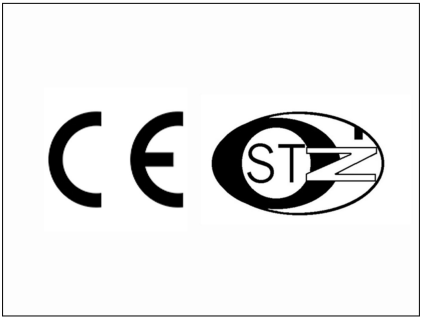
Operating voltage: 2.9V~3.3V

Normal operating current: 8mA (nominal current)

Low-frequency resonance frequency: 125KHZ

Key operating frequency: 434MHz

FCC ID: 2A5DH-DAEA-92



This equipment is not entitled to protection against harmful interference and may not cause interference to duly authorized systems.

**WARNING**

Button battery safety warnings:

- The button (coin) battery in the smart key is hazardous and both new and used batteries are to be kept away from children at all times.
- If swallowed or placed inside any part of the body, a lithium battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in 2 hours or less.

**WARNING**

- Medical attention should be sought immediately if it is suspected the battery has been swallowed or placed inside any part of the body.

- The button (coin) battery in the vehicle key is hazardous and both new and used batteries are to be kpet away from children at all times.
- If swallowed or placed inside any part of the body, a lithium battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in 2 hours or less.
- Medical attention should be sought immediately if it is suspected the button battery has been swallowed or placed inside any part of the body.

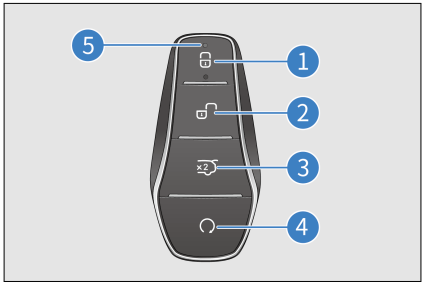
① Lock button

② Unlock button

③ Boot lid open button

④ Start/Stop button

⑤ Indicator




**CAUTION**

- The smart key is an electronic component. Observe the following instructions to prevent damage to the key:

**CAUTION**

- Do not place the smart key in a position exposed to high temperature, such as on the dashboard.
- Do not tamper with the smart key.
- Do not hit other objects with the smart key or drop it.
- Do not inmmerse the key in water or clean it in the ultrasonic scrubber.
- Do not place smart keys with devices that emit electromagnetic waves, such as the mobile phone.
- Do not attach any objects (such as a metal seal) which cut off electromagnetic wave signals when using the card.
- You can register a spare key for the same vehicle. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

- If the electronic smart key cannot operate the door within the normal distance, or the key indicator light is dim or off:
  - Check for nearby radio stations or airport radio transmitters that interfere with the normal operation of electronic smart keys.
  - The battery of an electronic smart key may be exhausted. Check the battery inside the electronic smart key. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.

**CAUTION**

- If you lose your smart key, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider as soon as possible to reduce the risk of vehicle theft or accidents.
- Do not change the transmission frequency arbitrarily, increase the transmission power (including additional transmission frequency amplifier), do not arbitrarily connect the external detection antenna or switch other transmitting detection antennas.
- Do not cause harmful interference to legitimate radio communication services when used; once there is interference, stop using and mining immediately.
- The use of micropower radio equipment must be free from interference of all radio services or from radiation of equipments for industrial, scientific and medical applications.
- Do not use it near aircraft or airports.
- People implanted with pacemakers or defibrillators should stay away from the detection antennas of intelligent entry and start systems, as electromagnetic waves can affect the normal use of such devices.
- In addition to people implanted with pacemakers or defibrillators, those who use other electronic medical devices should also consult the manufacturer on the use of such devices under the influence of electromagnetic waves. Electromagnetic waves may bring

**CAUTION**

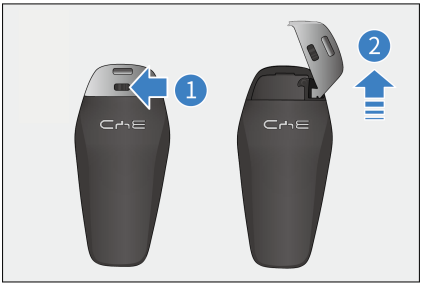
unknown consequences to the use of such medical devices.

### Mechanical Key

Mechanical key (in the smart key) - Unlock/Lock the driver's door. Insert the mechanical key back into the smart key when it is not in use.

### Taking out the mechanical key

- Slide the unlock clasp in the direction of arrow①, then pull the key cap in the direction of arrow②, and take out the mechanical key, as shown in the figure.
- To return the mechanical key to its original position, insert it in the opposite direction of arrow ② and close the key cap.




### NFC Digital Key

### NFC Digital Key

NFC is a digital key system provided by BYD. It allows you to register your phone or wearable device as your vehicle key, and unlock, lock and start your vehicle safely and easily.

The following conditions are required to use the NFC digital key. Please ensure that all conditions are met before using it:

- The vehicle has enabled the BYD Cloud service;
- The vehicle is configured and supports NFC digital key function;
- Relevant mobile phone or wearable device supports BYD NFC digital key function (please consult your BYD distributor and provider for specific supported device models).

**Enabling NFC Digital Key**

It can be enabled in any of the following methods, including: BYD APP, email link, and vehicle settings. Before activating it, please enter the vehicle with the physical key, start the vehicle and keep it in "P" gear.

1. BYD APP: Please go to the mobile APP store to download BYD APP, complete registration and login. Click "NFC/ Digital key" and follow the prompts.
2. Email link: After logging in the email on the mobile phone (the number is reserved when purchase the car), check the email about digital key from "BYD Auto" (bydapp@byd.auto), and activate it according to the prompts.
3. Vehicle setting: Please enter vehicle setting on the multimedia touchscreen, and click "Digital Key" module to activate. The path to Digital Key: → Vehicle Settings → Windows and Locks→Digital Key.

**Enabling the NFC digital key with wearable device**

Wearable devices support Apple Watch (for other wearable devices, please consult the distributor and provider), it can be enabled in any of the following ways:

1. Sync the iPhone to the Apple Watch after successful activation: Activate the iPhone digital key after wearing the unlocked watch. After the iPhone is successfully activated, the prompts can be synchronized to nearby Apple Watch to add the digital key, and complete the activation steps accordingly.
2. Watch APP activation: It applies to the case that the iPhone digital key is not synchronized to the Apple Watch when it is activated. Please open the Watch APP, select "Wallet", find the corresponding key, and click "Add" to complete activation steps accordingly.

**The Usage of NFC digital key**

When using, please turn on the NFC function of the device and use it according to the following prompts:

- Carrying a mobile phone/wearable device with an NFC digital key enabled, unlock/lock the vehicle by placing its NFC antenna area close to the NFC sign on the side mirror of the driver's side (for NFC antenna area, please consult your device provider);
- After entering the vehicle, place the mobile phone or wearable device at the NFC sign in the vehicle to obtain vehicle start permission.

**CAUTION**

- Start the vehicle as soon as possible after you have obtained the start permission using the NFC digital key. If the car is not started in time, put the mobile phone or wearable device in the NFC sign again to obtain the start permission.

**The Removal of NFC Digital Key**

The digital key can be deleted in any of the following methods:

1. Delete in BYD APP: Open BYD APP to enter the digital key management page, click the digital key to be deleted, and enter the operation password to complete the deletion;

2. Delete on the multimedia touchscreen: Please bring the physical key into the car, open the multimedia touchscreen, enter the Vehicle Settings→Windows and Locks →Digital Key management page, click the digital key to be deleted, and complete the deletion according to the prompts;
3. Delete in the wallet: Open the system wallet, find the digital key card that needs to be deleted, and complete the deletion according to the system prompts.

## Locking/Unlocking Doors

### Anti-theft Yaw Rate Sensor

- If someone tries to steal the wheels or tow away the vehicle, the anti-theft yaw sensor will respond to the condition of the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is transported on a ferry or train, the anti-theft yaw rate sensor will not give an alarm when the vehicle enters the transport mode, because these movements may affect the vehicle and trigger an alarm.

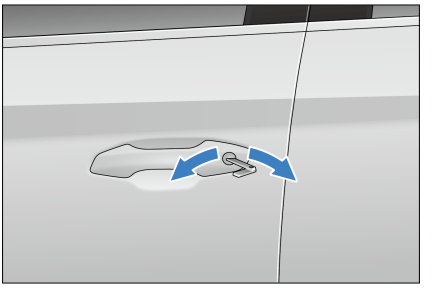
**CAUTION**

- If the alarm system fails, please contact the after-sales service for maintenance.
- Do not repair or replace the components of the alarm system by yourself. Any such operation may affect the insurance terms.

### Locking/Unlocking with Mechanical Key

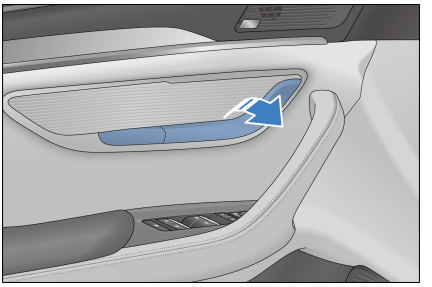
Insert the mechanical key into the keyhole and turn the key.

- Turn the key clockwise to unlock the driver's door.
- Turn the key counterclockwise to lock the driver's door.



### Opening with Interior Door Handle

- When the vehicle is unlocked, pull the handle once to open the door from inside the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is locked, pull the handle twice to open the door from inside the vehicle.



**CAUTION**

- Cold temperatures makes it more difficult to close the doors in winter conditions. In this case, you can use your hand to push and close the door until the door is closed, and then stop pushing.
- Under extremely low temperature conditions, you can turn on the air conditioner for a period of time and then close the door according to the above operation method.

**Locking/Unlocking/Finding the Vehicle with Smart Key**

- The wireless remote control is used to unlock or lock all doors at a close distance, and complete additional functions.
- In the active area, press the associated button on the registered smart key to lock or unlock all doors.

**Locking:**

- With the vehicle powered off:
  - When all doors and hood are closed, press the lock button to lock all doors simultaneously. The external rearview mirrors are folded in (when the "Auto" switch of mirrors is turned on), and the turn signals flash once. Check whether all doors are locked firmly.
  - If any door, the hood or boot lid is not closed, press the lock button, the turn signals do not flash, and the horn sounds once at the same time.



- With the vehicle powered ON:
  - When all doors and hood are closed, press the lock button to lock all doors simultaneously. The side mirrors will not fold, the turn signals will not flash, and the alarm will sound once after 2.5 seconds.

**Unlocking:**

- Press the unlock button to unlock all the doors at the same time. The turn signals flash twice.
- Doors can be unlocked/locked with the unlock/lock button under any power state.
- When the smart key is used to unlock all doors simultaneously, even if the doors are not opened, if the "DOOR" switch is turned on, the interior light goes on for 15s and then goes out (the user can slide down the status bar on the top of the infotainment touchscreen to open the Quick interface and turn on or off the "DOOR" switch).
- After unlocking the vehicle in anti-theft mode with a smart key, open any door within 30 seconds. or all doors will relock automatically.
- If the lock or unlock button is pressed and held, the locking or unlocking function is not repeated. Release the button and press it to realize the function again.
- If the key is placed in the locked vehicle, and the boot lid is closed, the vehicle is unlocked actively, and the turn signals flash twice.

**Finding the vehicle**

- With the anti-theft alarm system armed, pressing the lock button makes the vehicle sounds a long beep and turn signals flash 15 times. Use this function to locate the vehicle when it cannot be found.
- When the vehicle is in car search mode, press the lock button again. The vehicle enters the next car search mode.

**Raising/Lowering Windows with Smart Key***

- With the vehicle powered off:

- Press and hold the lock button of the smart key to roll up four windows.
- Press and hold the unlock button of the smart key to roll down four windows.

- The user can turn on or off the above functions via (infotainment system) → Vehicle settings → Locks. By default, the rolling up function is turned on, and the rolling down function is turned off.

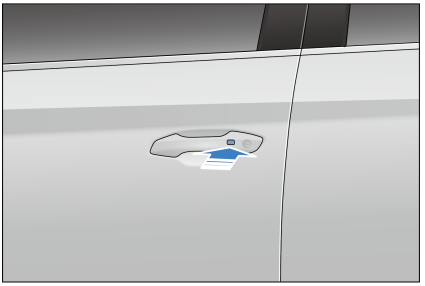
**WARNING**

- Before activating the remote window opening, check that all occupants are not at risk of being caught or pinched.

### Locking/Unlocking with Microswitch

#### Locking

- With the vehicle powered off:
  - When doors are closed but unlocked, carry the smart key and press the microswitch on the front door handle to lock all doors simultaneously. The external rearview mirrors are folded in (when the "Auto" switch of mirrors is turned on), and the turn signals flash once. Check whether all doors are locked firmly.
  - If any door, the hood or boot lid is not closed, use microswitch to lock the vehicle, turn signals do not flash, and the horn sounds once at the same time.



- With the vehicle powered ON:
  - When doors are closed, carry the smart key and press the microswitch on the front door handle to lock all doors 0simultaneously. If side mirrors do not fold, turn signals do not flash, and the alarm sounds once.

#### Unlocking

- In the anti-theft state, when carrying the smart key into the activation area, press the microswitch on the front door handle to unlock all doors simultaneously. The turn signals flash twice.
- In the anti-theft state, please open the doors within 30s after using the unlocking function. Otherwise, all doors are locked automatically again.
- Pressing the microswitch does not unlock/lock doors in the following cases:
  - Press the microswitch while opening or closing the door.
  - The key is in the vehicle.

**REMINDER**

- If the smart key is too close to an exterior door handle or window, it may not be possible to activate the entry function.

**Raising/Lowering Windows with Microswitch**

With the vehicle powered off, carry an effective smart key and press and hold the microswitch to realize automatic rolling up/down of four windows. Turn on or off the functions via Infotainment System → Vehicle Settings → Locks. By default, the rolling up function is turned on, and the rolling down function is turned off.

**Locking/Unlocking with NFC Key Card***

**Locking:**

- With the vehicle powered off:
  - Make the phone NFC close to the area on the driver side mirror to lock all outside door locks when all doors are closed but not locked. The external rearview mirrors are folded in (when the "Auto" switch of mirrors is turned on), and the turn signals flash once. Check whether all doors are locked firmly.
  - If any door, the hood or boot lid is not closed, use the mobile phone NFC to lock the vehicle, the turn signals do not flash, and the horn sounds once at the same time.
- With the vehicle powered ON:
  - Make the phone NFC close to the area on the driver side mirror to lock all outside door locks when all doors and hood are closed. If side mirrors do not fold, turn signals do not flash, and the alarm sounds once.

**Unlocking:**

- When the anti-theft system is activated, carry the phone NFC close to sensing area with the NFC mark on the front left external mirror. All doors unlock simultaneously. The turn signals flash twice.
- When the anti-theft system is activated, please open the door within 30 seconds after unlocking with the phone NFC key. or all doors will relock automatically.
- After unlocking with phone NFC, the user can start the vehicle within 4 min, while this will be disabled upon locking at the "OFF" position.
- Place the phone NFC close to sensing area with the NFC mark on the front left external mirror does not work if:
  - When opening or closing the door, the phone NFC is close to the command area on the front left exterior rearview mirror.

**CAUTION**

- The keyless start permission lasts for up to 4 minutes.
- Some smartphones do not support NFC functionality when turned off.
- Please avoid long-term or frequent use when the smartphone is dead.

**Locking/Unlocking the Boot**

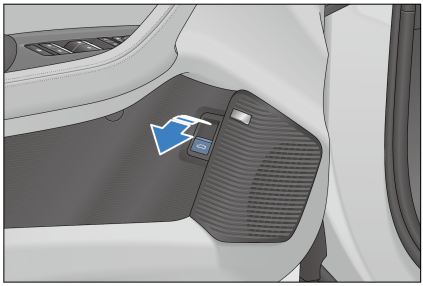
**Opening/Closing boot with smart key***

Double press the boot lid open button on the smart key to open the boot lid. Turn signals flash twice. Press this button again to stop opening. Then double press it to close the boot.



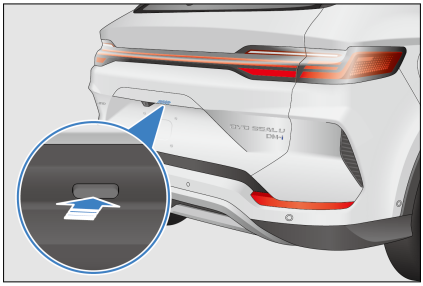
**Opening/Closing the boot from inside the vehicle**

- When the boot lid is closed, if the switch is pulled once, the boot lid is unlocked and run to the set height (maximum height by default).
- When the vehicle is powered on and the boot lid is opened, pull up this switch to close the boot lid, and release it to stop this lid at the current position.



**Opening the boot with exterior switch**

Press the exterior boot lid switch while carrying the smart key or when the vehicle is unlocked to open the boot lid.

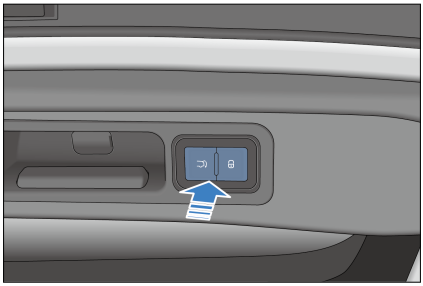


**REMINDER**

- If the switch is pressed again while the lid is in motion, it will stop at its current position. If the button is then pressed again, this lid moves in the opposite direction.

**①Power boot lid close button***

- When the boot lid is open and stationary, press the boot close button to close this lid.
- Press the boot close button a second time to stop the lid at the current position. If the button is then pressed again, this lid will move in the opposite direction.



**②Vehicle lock button***

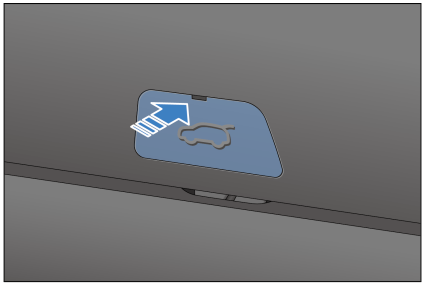
- When the vehicle is powered off and the boot lid is opened, carry an effective smart key and press the locking button to close the boot lid, lock the vehicle and enter the anti-theft state.

**REMINDER**

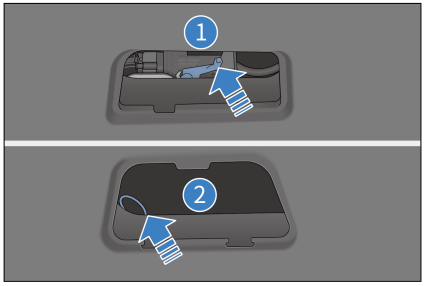
- Before closing the boot electronically, make sure doors, windows and sunroof are properly closed.

**Interior emergency unlocking of boot lid**

1. Remove the boot lid lock maintenance cover from the boot lid shield.



2. Pull the pull lever ①*/lock ②* to unlock the boot lid.




**REMINDER**

- When the vehicle is powered off, the trunk lid can be unlocked from the inside in case of emergency.

**Setting boot opening height**

- Open the boot manually or automatically to the desired position, keep it at this position, and then press and hold the interior boot button for over three seconds. The speaker sounds for one second, indicating that the opening height is successfully set to the current position.
- Adjust the boot open height via (infotainment system) → Vehicle Settings → Locks.

**Anti-pinch**

- The power boot lid can automatically open when obstructed by external force during closing.
- It stops moving when obstructed by external force during opening.

**When the boot fails to act automatically**

Manually and completely close the boot for recovery.

**When reconnecting 12V battery**

Manually close the boot to ensure the power boot lid functions normally.

**WARNING**

In order to prevent serious injury, make sure to observe the following precautions:

- Never try to deliberately activate the anti-pinch function.
- Make sure to alert people nearby of the lid motion.
- Make sure hands and fingers are clear from the lid area when it is closing.
- Make sure the surrounding area is safe when opening or closing the boot.
- Make sure the boot is properly closed when the vehicle is in motion.

**WARNING**

- Make sure to remove any ice or snow from the area before opening the boot, otherwise the lid may close again.
- Do not manually interfere in lid motion when it is opening or closing.
- Be mindful of windy conditions when opening or closing the boot.
- The anti-pinch function may fail to work if an object is caught right before the boot is fully closed.
- The lid may start closing before fully opening. Opening or closing the boot on slopes is more difficult than on level ground. Be mindful of the possibility of the lid to move on its own in such conditions. Before loading or unloading the boot, make sure the lid is fully open and secure.
- The anti-pinch function may fail depending on the object shape. Be careful not to get your fingers or anything else caught.

### Locking/Unlocking with Central Locking

#### Locking or unlocking the vehicle with the central locking

Refer to "Driver Door Switch Group"in this chapter.

#### Locking or unlocking doors automatically

- All doors are automatically locked when the vehicle speed exceeds 8 km/h.
- When theSTART/STOP button is pressed and the power is switched from "ON" to "OFF", all doors are locked automatically.

#### Locking/unlocking all doors concurrently

- With the anti-theft alarm system disarmed, the backlight of the central lock button turns on if the vehicle is locked and off if the vehicle is unlocked.
- Pressing the central lock button locks all doors so that any attempt to open any door from the outside fails. At this time, pull the interior handle to unlock a door and pull a second time to open it.

**REMINDER**

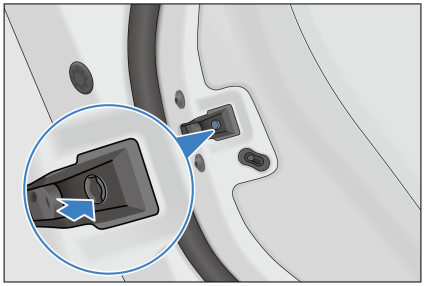
- All doors unlock automatically when the vehicle suffers a strong impact, depending on the impact intensity and accident type.

#### Emergency Vehicle Locking with Mechanical Key

When the central locking system or the smart key fails, use the mechanical key for emergency locking or unlocking.

**Locking:**

1. Remove the mechanical key from the smart key.
2. Open the other three doors except the driver's door, and push the white slider downward for these three doors respectively with the mechanical key teeth in the direction of the arrow, as shown in the figure, to close and lock the door.



3. After locking the other three doors except the driver's door, open the driver's door, lift and hold the door handle, and pull it to the maximum opening angle.
4. Insert the mechanical key into the keyhole, turn it counterclockwise as far as it can go, return it to the initial position and pull it out. (See "Locking/ Unlocking with Mechanical Key" in this Chapter.)
5. Release the door handle and check whether all doors are locked.

**Unlocking:**

1. Remove the mechanical key from the smart key.
2. Lift and hold the door handle and pull it to the maximum opening angle.
3. Insert the mechanical key into the keyhole, turn it clockwise as far as it can go, return it to the initial position and pull it out.
4. Release the door handle, and pull it again to open the driver's door.
5. Pull the interior handle twice to unlock the three other doors.

**REMINDER**

- Prevent excessive force from distorting or breaking the key during the operation.

## Smart Access and Start System

Use the smart key to unlock or lock the vehicle doors and start the vehicle.

### Access

Use the smart key to unlock or lock the vehicle doors (for details, please refer to "Vehicle locking/unlocking/locating with smart key"and "Locking/Unlocking with Microswitch").

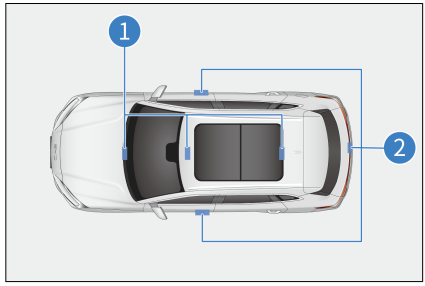
### Start-up Function

With the smart key inside, press the brake pedal and the START/STOP button to start the vehicle. (Refer to “Starting the Vehicle".)

### Aerial positions

①Interior detection antenna

②Exterior detection antenna



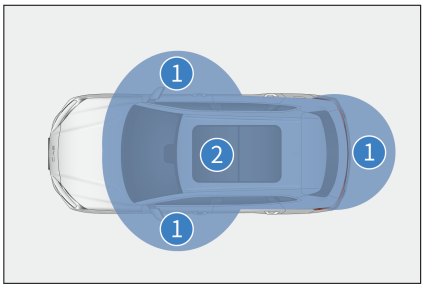

### Activation area

The PEPS function takes effect only when the registered smart key is in the activation area.

① The entry function activation area is about 1.2 m away from the door handles on both sides and the external boot lid release button.

② The start function activation area is located in the compartment.

If another smart key is near this vehicle's smart key, unlocking may take longer than usual, which is normal.




**REMINDER**

The smart access and start system may not work properly when:

- There is a strong electromagnetic field nearby, such as TV towers, power stations, and broadcasting stations.
- The smart key is being carried along with a communication device, such as a two-way radio or mobile phone.
- The smart key is in contact with or covered by a metal object.
- The door handle is operated too quickly.
- The smart key is too close to the handle.
- Another wireless remote control function is being used nearby.
- The battery runs out.
- The smart key is close to highvoltage equipment or equipment that produces noise.

**REMINDER**

- The smart key is being carried along with another smart key or radio-wave-emitting device.
- Even in the activation area, the smart key may not work normally in some positions (e.g., on the dashboard, in the glove box, or on the floor).

- If the PEPS system does not work normally, and you cannot enter the vehicle, the mechanical key concealed in the smart key can be used to unlock and lock the driver's door, or the wireless remote control function can be used to unlock and lock all doors.
- Possible causes for the failure of the normal start function when the "START/STOP" button is pressed:
  - If the smart key does not work, the smart key warning light on the instrument cluster goes on, and the information display screen on the instrument cluster displays a prompt about the low SOC of the key battery, the battery SOC of the key may have run out.
  - Start the drive motor repeatedly in a short time. Wait for 10s before starting the vehicle.
- If the PEPS system cannot work normally due to system fault, take all smart keys to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.

**Saving battery SOC**

- Communication between the key and the vehicle occurs even when the vehicle is parked. Therefore, do not leave the key in the vehicle or within 2 m from the vehicle.
- If the smart key receives strong electromagnetic waves for a long time,

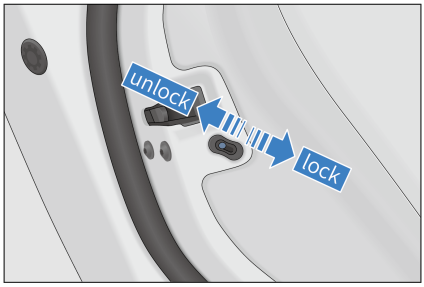
the battery runs out rapidly. The smart key must be kept at least 1 m away from the following equipment:

- TV set
- Personal computer
- Mobile phone charger
- Light stand
- Fluorescent lamp

## Child Protection Lock

Child protection locks are designed to prevent children in rear seats from accidentally opening rear doors. Such locks are provided on the sides of the left and right rear doors.

The door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle while the latch is locked. To open this door, use the exterior door handle.




**CAUTION**

- Before driving, especially when a child is in the vehicle, ensure that the doors are closed and the child protection lock function is enabled.
- Proper use of seat belts and activation of child protection lock helps prevent the driver and passengers from being thrown out of the vehicle in an accident. and

**CAUTION**

also prevents a door from being opened accidentally.

# Seats

## Seat Precautions

- Adjust the driver's seat so that the pedal, steering wheel and dashboard controller are easy to control for the driver.
- The most effective safeguard while driving is to keep the seatback upright, always resting well on the seatback, and adjusting the seat belt to the right position.
- Do not fold in the rear seats during driving.
- Secure your luggage appropriately to prevent it from skidding or moving. Luggage in the vehicle should not be higher than seatbacks.

**WARNING**

- Do not sit on the upper part of the folded seat backrest or on the goods. Otherwise, people may be seriously injured due to improper sitting on the seat or improper fastening of the seat belt in case of emergency braking or collision.
- Do not place any items under the seats. The driver may lose control of the vehicle because items placed there affect the seat locking mechanism or accidentally push up the seat position adjustment lever, causing the seat to move suddenly.

**WARNING**

- When adjusting the seat, do not place your hand under the seat or near its operating parts, to prevent being crushed.
- After adjusting the seatback, lean back to confirm the seatback has been locked. Seatbacks that are not fully locked can cause personal injuries in an accident or emergency braking.
- Do not put the seatback down while driving or riding in the vehicle. This makes the shoulder strap of the seat belt not properly attached to the body. As a result, you and your passengers could hit the strap in an accident, causing serious injury to the neck or other parts; or you and your passenger may slip out of the waist belt, resulting in other serious injuries.
- During driving, no one is allowed to sit in the boot area or on the folded seat. Using these areas without proper protective measures may cause serious injuries in case of an accident or sudden braking.
- Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is in motion, as unpredictable seat movement can cause the loss of vehicle control at this time.
- Do not drive the vehicle until occupants are seated properly.
- Before laying the rear seats down, check the positions of the rear headrests and the front seats, to avoid interference among the rear seats, the front seats and central passage.

**REMINDER**

- When folding in the rear seats, be careful not to damage the seat belt, and check whether the buckle is correctly placed in the buckle slot on the seat cushion.
- Do not fasten seat belts before seat adjustment.
- While adjusting a seat, do not let it hit against any passenger or the luggage.
- During the measurement of seat cushion depth, the front and rear positions of the seat are the rearmost positions of the slide rail, and the design angle of the backrest is 25°.
- During the measurement of seat cushion width, adjust the backrest angle to the designed state (the backrest angle of the second row seats is 28°), and adjust the seat slide rail* to the rearmost position. For the separable and combinable seats in the same row, measure the cushion width as a whole row of seats.

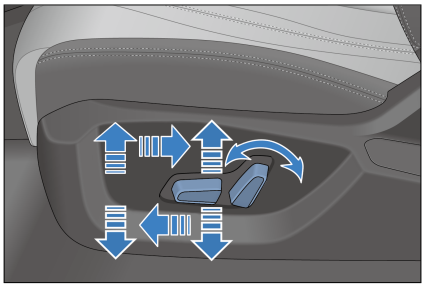
**Adjusting Front Seat with Power***

Electrical front seat adjustment includes the adjustment of front and rear distance, seat cushion height*, seat cushion angle* and backrest angle. Choose the following methods according to the functions available in your vehicle.

**Seat position adjustment switch**

- Move the seat position adjustment switch back or forth to move the seat backward or forward.
- Move the front end of the switch up or down to change the seat base angle.

- Move the rear end of the switch up or down to raise or lower the seat.



**Seatback angle adjustment switch**

- Move this switch forward or backward to adjust the seatback angle.

**REMINDER**

- Releasing the switch stops the seat in this position. Do not place anything under the seat as this may prevent the seat from operating.

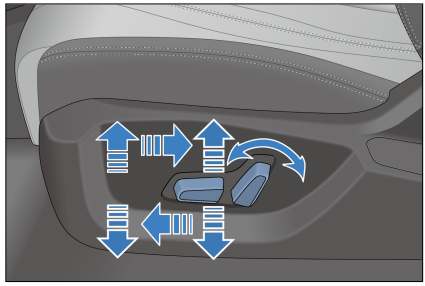
## Front Seat Adjustment

**Adjusting Front Seat with Power***

Electrical front seat adjustment includes the adjustment of front and rear distance, seat cushion height*, seat cushion angle* and backrest angle. Choose the following methods according to the functions available in your vehicle.

**Seat position adjustment switch**

- Move the seat position adjustment switch back or forth to move the seat backward or forward.
- Move the front end of the switch up or down to change the seat base angle.
- Move the rear end of the switch up or down to raise or lower the seat.



**Seatback angle adjustment switch**

- Move this switch forward or backward to adjust the seatback angle.

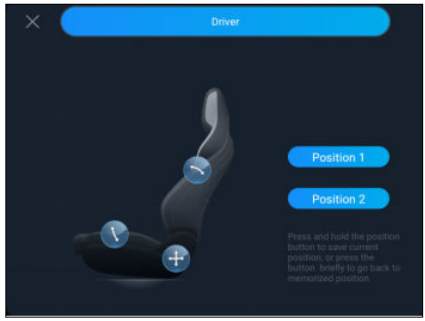
**REMINDER**

- Releasing the switch stops the seat in this position. Do not place anything under the seat as this may prevent the seat from operating.

**Memory System***

**Memory switch position**

To use the seat memory feature, go to Vehicle Settings → Seat → Seat Adjustment on the touchscreen.




**Memory setting function**

- Memory setting conditions
  - The vehicle is powered on with no vehicle speed.

- The driver's seat and side mirrors have been adjusted to the desired positions.
- No operation is made on the driver's seat, and side mirrors.

- Memory setting method
  - Press and hold Position 1 or 2 to save the current position.

**REMINDER**

- If the position button on the memory switch has already been set, the position set will be overwritten.

**Memory wake-up function**

Regular memory wake-up

- With the vehicle in P, if the following conditions are met, press Position 1 or 2, and the driver's seat memory system performs memory wake-up.
  - The vehicle is not in anti-theft mode.
  - No speed.
  - Seat settings have been initialized.

**Automatic Function**

- Normal function
  - Automatic backward: For easy exiting, this feature also works when the vehicle power switches from "START" to "STOP" and the driver's door opens.
  - Automatic forward: When the vehicle power switches from "STOP" to "START" and the driver's door is closed, the seat will automatically move forward to the position before the last power-off if no horizontal position adjustment is performed after the auto-back feature is triggered upon the last power-off.
- User setting
  - The automatic forward/backward moving function can be canceled or restored from the touchscreen.

**Heating and Ventilation System***

- Go to the shortcut menu by swiping down the status bar from the top of the touchscreen, to turn on or off seat heating and ventilation systems.
- Use voice command to turn on or off seat heating and ventilation systems.;
- For adjustment, go to "Vehicle Settings" → "Seats" → "Front Seat Vent/Heating" from the touchscreen;



**Seat heating**

- The seat heating feature has three modes: "OFF", "Level I" and "Level II". Each mode corresponds to a different level of fan speed.

**Seat ventilation**

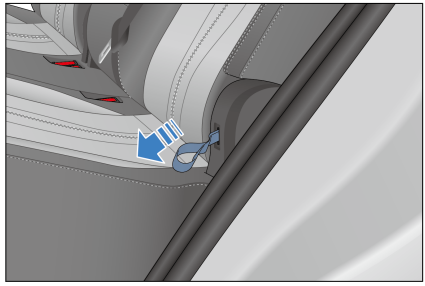
- The seat ventilation feature has three modes: "OFF", "Level I" and "Level II". Each mode corresponds to a different level of fan speed. The corresponding seat module provides indication by varying color depth.

**Ventilation and heating functions cannot be turned on simultaneously**

- Press the ventilation switch to make the ventilator work; if the heating switch is then pressed, the ventilator will stop and the heater will start to work.
- Press the heating switch to make the heater work; if the ventilation switch is then pressed, the heater will stop and the ventilator will start to work.

## Folding Rear Seats

Pull the strap on the rear seat to fold the bench.



**REMINDER**

- Please fold or unfold the rear seats at a moderate speed. Avoid quickly lowering or pulling up seatbacks to prevent damage to or malfunction of rear seats and the seat belts.
- When unfolding a rear seat, do not push the seatback hard; otherwise, the seatback will be pre-stressed and impossible to unlock.
- When unfolding a seatback, check that the buckle position is proper to expose the reserved opening on the seat.
- Do not turn over the seat when the seat belt latch is inserted into the buckle.

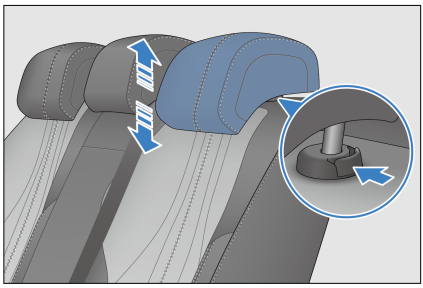
## Rear Headrests

1. Lifting a head support

Lift the head support in the direction of the head post until it is in the appropriate position, and then release it until a locking sound is heard.

2. Lowering the head support

Press the head support adjustment button, lower the head support to a proper position, and then release the button.



3. Removing the head support

Press and hold the head support adjustment button, remove the head support, and release the button.

4. Installing the head support

Insert the head support post into the bushing with the grooves facing forward. Press the head support adjustment button, push down the head support to a proper position, and then release the button.

**REMINDER**

- Head supports protect vehicle occupants from head and neck injuries. Adjust the head support so that its centre aligns with the back of your head for maximum protection. Adjust the head support to the proper position based on your actual height.
- When adjusting head support height, align the occupant's ear tip line with the centre line of the head support.
- After adjusting the head support, ensure that it is locked into position.

**REMINDER**

- Do not drive the vehicle without head supports.
- Do not attach any object to the head support lever.

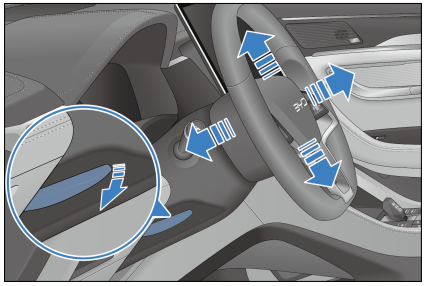
# Steering Wheel

## Adjusting the Steering Wheel

### Adjusting the Steering Wheel Manually

To adjust the angle or axial position of the steering wheel, hold it and perform the following operations:

- Press the steering wheel adjustment handle downward to tilt the steering wheel to the desired position, and then restore the handle to the locking position.



**WARNING**

- Do not adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is running. Otherwise, misoperation of the vehicle may be caused, resulting in an accident.

**WARNING**

- After adjusting the steering wheel, move it up and down to confirm that it is firmly locked.

**Steering assist mode setting**

- The hand feeling of steering assist differs among people, and different users have different evaluations and demands on the feeling.
- Choose Comfort or Sport mode via →Vehicle Settings→Smart Chassis.

**REMINDER**

- Setting the power steering to sport mode is suggested if the steering wheel feels light when the vehicle is running at a high speed.

**Steering Wheel Heating**

The steering wheel heating function (optional) can be activated in three ways:

1. Go to the infotainment touchscreen → → **Vehicle Settings** → **A/C** to access the A/C operation interface. Tap the ventilation and heating settings, then the button below the heated steering wheel icon: **ON** indicates that the feature has been turned on, and **OFF** indicates that the feature has been turned off.
2. Go to the drop-down shortcut menu and tap the steering wheel heating icon. The function is activated when the icon lights up, and deactivated when it turns gray.
3. Voice control: Activate voice control to turn the heated steering wheel on or off.

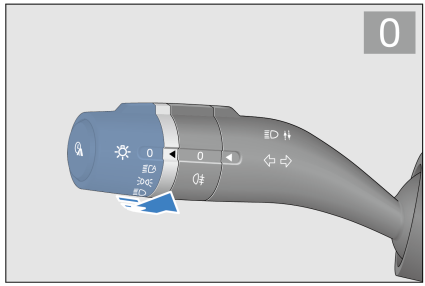
**CAUTION**

- The steering wheel heating function automatically shuts off after running for 30 minutes each time it is activated.

# Switches

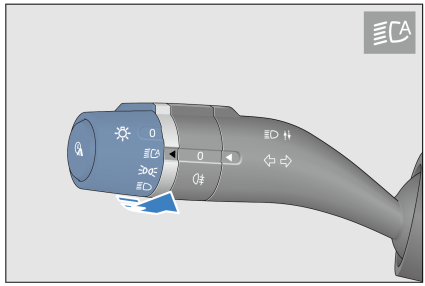
## Light Switches

Rotate the knob at the end of the light switch to 0 to turn off all lights (except for daytime running lights).



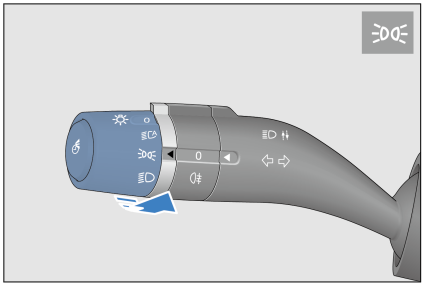

**Auto lights**

Turn this knob to " ". BCM collects the brightness value acquired by the light intensity sensor and automatically turns on/off position lights and low beams.



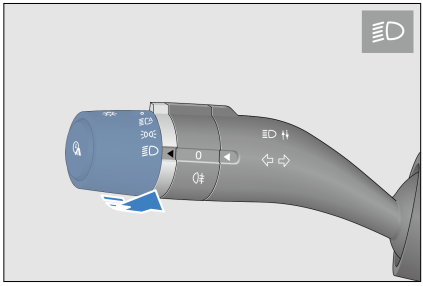
**Position lights**

Set the light switch to to turn on position lights.



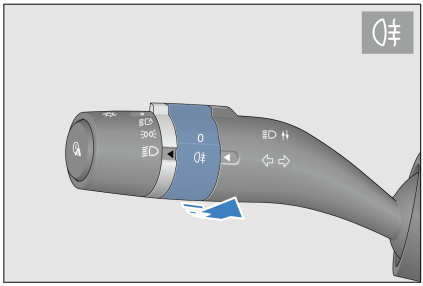
**Low beam**

Set the light switch to to turn on the low beam.



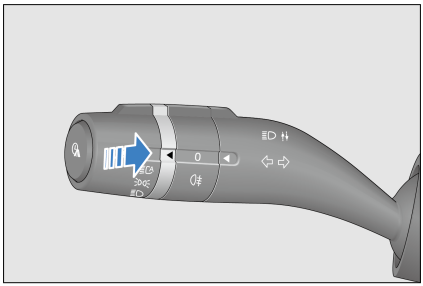
**Rear fog lights**

Rotate this knob to and rotate the fog light knob to to turn on the rear fog lights.



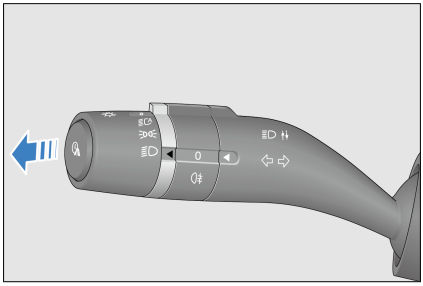
**Overtaking light**

Press the light switch lever (toward the steering wheel) to light up overtaking lights. Release it, and the lever resets automatically and overtaking lights go out.



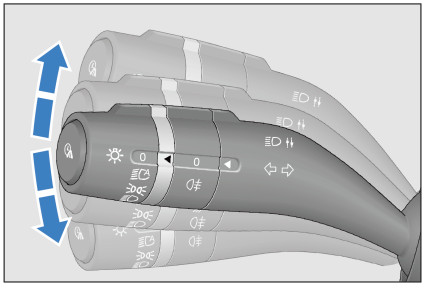
**High beam**

When this knob is rotated to , turn the switch away from the steering wheel to turn on high beams, and then turn it again to turn off high beams.



**Turn signals**

- Push up the light handle to signal right turn.The right turn signal and its indicator on the instrument cluster flash.
- Push down the light switch lever, and then the left turn signals and the turn signal indicator on the instrument cluster start flashing simultaneously.



- After turn signals are turned on, they flash continuously even if the light switch is released. Turn signals go out automatically after the vehicle finishes turning the corner. Because of different driving habits for drivers, the light switch needs to be rotated for a round to reset in some extreme cases.

**Auto off**

- Conditions to activate the auto light off function: Conditions for enabling the auto off function: This function is enabled when the light switch is rotated to the or , and the power supply is switched from "Start" to "Stop".
- With the auto off function activated, if the driver's door is closed, this function automatically turns off headlights and position lights after 10 s.
- With the auto off function activated, if the driver's door is opened, this function automatically turns off headlights and position lights after 10 min.
- After auto off, if the light mode changes, lights will be turned on according to the new state. If the conditions for enabling the auto off function are met after that, the auto off function will be activated again.
- Disabling the auto off function: After the vehicle is powered on, the auto off function is disabled, and the light knob can be operated normally.
- The auto off function turns off the lights. If the anti-theft state is activated and then deactivated, the lights turned off before are automatically turned on again. If the driver's door is not opened, this function turns off the lights again after 10 s. If the door is opened, the auto off function turns off the lights after 10 min.

**"Follow Me Home" Function**

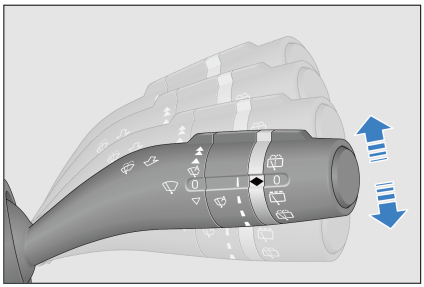
- Follow me home:
  - The user can go to the "Follow me home delay" setting interface via the Infotainment → Vehicle settings → Light & ambient to set the time of follow me home. The default time is 10 s. When the light switch is rotated to the , or position, and the owner powers off the vehicle, locks the four doors, and tries to leave the vehicle, the corresponding lights continue to light up for 10 s (or a set time) to provide the lighting source.
- Follow me home:
  - The user can go to the "Follow me home delay" setting interface via the Infotainment System → Vehicle settings → Light & ambient to set the time of follow me home. The default time is 10 s. When the light switch is rotated to the , or position, and the owner unlocks the vehicle and tries to get close to it, the corresponding lights continue to light up for 10 s (or a set time) to provide the lighting source.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- The duration of lightening can be changed by infotainment interface.

## Wiper Switch

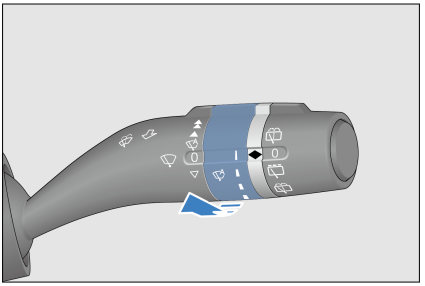
- The lever is used to control the windscreen wipers and washer. It has five modes:
  - ▲▲ : Fast
  - ▲ : Slow
  - : Intermittent
  - 0 : Off
  - ▽ : Point-wiping



- To select the level, move the lever upward or downward.
- At low- and high- speed modes, the wiper operates continuously.
- To let wipers work in the spot-wiping mode “ ▽ ”, pull the lever from the “ 0 ” position. In this mode, the front windshield wipers operate at a low speed until the lever is released.

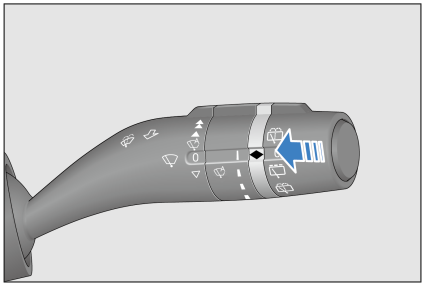
**Automatic wiper/Intermittent mode**

- The rain sensor automatically controls the operation mode of wipers based on the rainfall, and it is located in front of the interior rearview mirror on the front windscreen inside the vehicle.
- To use the auto wiper function, turn the wiper switch to the automatic mode, go to multimedia touchscreen → Vehicle Settings → Greeting and enable Auto wiper.
- To use the intermittent wiper function, turn the wiper switch to the automatic mode, and disable auto wiper in multimedia touchscreen → Vehicle Settings → Greeting.
- The automatic wiper function has four sensitivity levels. The higher the lever, the higher the sensitivity. When using the automatic wiper function, change the sensitivity by adjusting the toggle based on real-time rain conditions. If the wiper reacts to rain too quickly, reduce the sensitivity; if the wiper reacts to rain too slowly, increase the sensitivity.



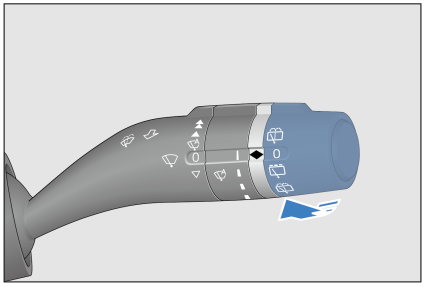
**Front windscreen washer**

- To clean the front windscreen, please pull the wiper lever backward (towards the steering wheel). In this case, the washer sprays water all the time, and the wiper works simultaneously.
- If the lever is pulled for less than one second, the wipers wipe once after the current action. If the time exceeds one second, the wipers wipe twice.

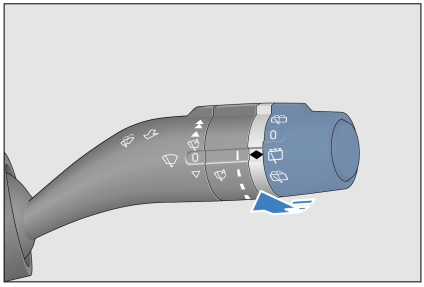


**Rear Windscreen Wiper and Washer**

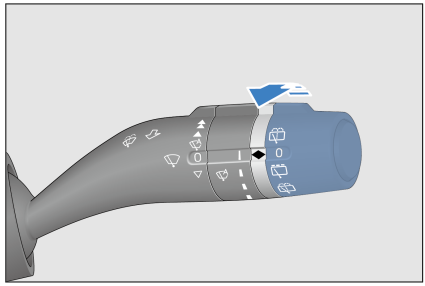
- Rotate the knob at the end of the wiper lever to to activate the rear windscreen wiper, and to 0 to deactivate it.



- Rotate this knob to to simultaneously activate the rear windscreen wiper and washer.



- Rotate this knob to and release. The wiper operates twice after washing fluid has been sprayed.



**REMINDER**

- Check and clean the wiper blades at regular intervals.
- Do not start the wipers while rain is starting, as the windscreen cannot be cleaned and rainwater mixed with sand and dust may instantly blur your view, affecting driving safety.
- Use cleaning agent for glass. The use of water, or another type of detergent, may damage the washer motor.
- If the boot is open or not fully closed, the wiper switch will fail to control the rear wiper until the lid is closed.

## Front Left Door Switch

- The switch on each door can be used to operate the window.
- The vehicle power is ON, or the power-off delay limit is not exceeded if the vehicle power is OFF.

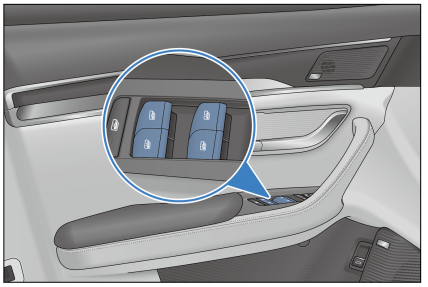
**Power Window Switches**

- The front left door is equipped with four switches to correspondingly control the four windows.
  - Down - press the switch

- Up - pull the switch

**Automatic operation (If the Anti-pinch Function equipped)**

- Rolling down: Press a switch to the second notch and release. The corresponding window rolls down automatically.



- Rolling up: Pull a switch to the second notch and release. The corresponding window rolls up automatically.
- To stop the window halfway, gently push the switch in the opposite direction.

**Manual operation**

- Rolling down: Press the switch to the first notch and do not release. The corresponding window is rolled down manually.
- Rolling up: Pull the switch to the first notch and do not release. The corresponding window is rolled up manually.

**Anti-pinch function***

When the window is obstructed by a person or an object while rolling up, it stops and rolls down to allow for the obstruction to be removed.

**Initialisation of anti-pinch function***

- If the constant power of low-voltage battery is disconnected during the window motion, the automatic window lifting function and anti-pinch function fail, and the indicator flashes. In this case, initialise the settings as follows:
- Pull up and hold the window switch so that the window glass reaches the top position and stalls there for 0.5 seconds.
- When the one-touch rolling up function is used, if the glass runs near the upper window frame sealing strip and is subject to certain resistance, it undergoes anti-pinch reverse movement.

**CAUTION**

- Excessively frequent activation of the anti-pinch function can activate the regulator motor's overheat protection.
- Do not intentionally activate the anti-pinch function by jamming any part of your body into the window.
- The anti-pinch function may not work if an object is jammed into the window when it is almost completely closed.
- Contacting a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance is recommended if the windows' automatic closing function or anti-pinch function is not working normally.

**CAUTION**

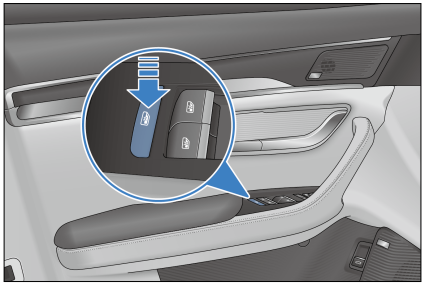
- Excessively frequent activation of the anti-pinch function can activate the regulator motor's overheat protection.
- Do not intentionally activate the anti-pinch function by jamming any part of your body into the window.

**CAUTION**

- The anti-pinch function may not work if an object is jammed into the window when it is almost completely closed.
- Contacting a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for maintenance is recommended if the windows' automatic closing function or anti-pinch function is not working normally.

**Window Lock Button**

- When the window lock button is pressed, the red indicator of window lock goes on. Only the switch on the driver's side can control the window regulation of four doors, while the rear window switch cannot control the window regulation.
- Press the switch a second time. The red window lock indicator goes out, and the window switches on the rear row work normally.



**Central Locking**

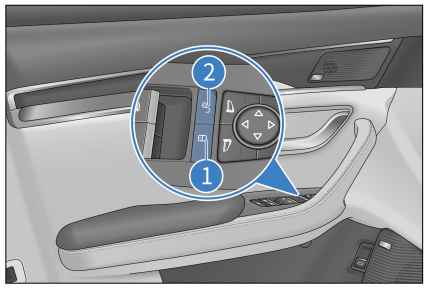
The driver's door is equipped with power door lock switches to lock or unlock all doors.

**①Locking**

Press the central lock button. All doors are locked and the red lock indicator lights up.

**②Unlocking**

Press the central unlock button. All doors are unlocked and the red lock indicator turns off.



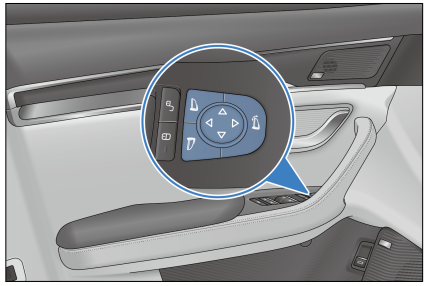

**Side Mirror Switches**

**Selection button Of Side Mirrors**

- Left side mirror adjustment button
- Right side mirror adjustment button

**Side Mirrors Adjustment button**

Press this button to adjust the side mirrors to a proper position.



**Electric Side Mirror Folding Button**

Press this button to fold in the left and right external rearview mirrors

simultaneously, and press it again to unfold them.

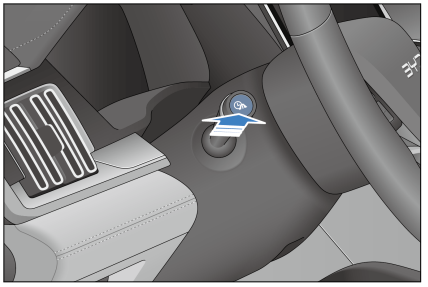
**REMINDER**

- If the side mirrors get frozen, do not operate the controller or scrape their surface. Deicing spray should be used.

## Odometer Toggle

**Milometer Switch**

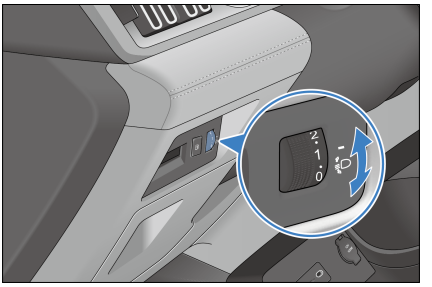
- Press the "ODO/TRIP" button to switch ODO -- TRIP A -- TRIP B -- HEV TRIP -- EV TRIP -- ODO. The instrument cluster simultaneously displays all corresponding mileages.
- Press and hold "Mileage 1" and "Mileage 2" to clear the mileage information.



## Headlight Adjustment

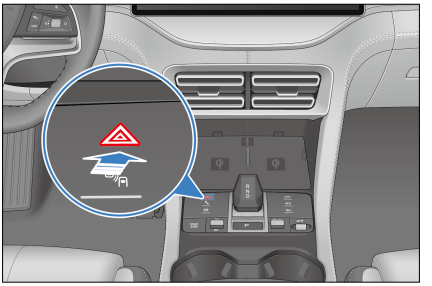
**Headlight adjustment switch**

- Press this switch to adjust the vertical beam angle of headlights. After the low beam is turned on, this switch works.
- If the headlight adjustment switch is in "0" position, the beam height of headlights is the highest; if this switch is in "5" position, the height is the lowest. According to the driver's needs, when the switch is adjusted to a certain position from 0 to 5, the beam height of headlights changes accordingly.




## Emergency Light

After ⚠ is pressed, all turn signals start to flash, and the turn signal indicator on the instrument cluster flashes synchronously. Press ⚠ again to stop flashing.



# Steering Wheel Switch Set

**Steering Wheel Switch Group**




**Left-hand buttons**

**Cruise switch***

- Turns the ACC system on or off.

**+/RES**

- Pull up the lever and press this button to increase at a certain speed; Press and hold it to continuously increase the speed.
- Activate the cruise control system and resume to the previously set speed.

**-/SET**

- Pull down the lever and press this button to decrease at a certain speed; Press and hold it to continuously decrease the speed.
- Sets the current speed to the target cruise speed.

**Distance -**

- Adjust the following distance to the vehicle ahead in the ACC following function and decrease one level.

**Distance +**

- Adjust the distance from the vehicle ahead in the ACC following function and increase one level.

**Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) Button**

- Turning on or off the ICC (ACC must be activated first.)

**REMINDER**

- See detailed information about ACC in Adaptive cruise control* in Chapter 4.

**Custom button** 

- If the custom button is not customized, press this button to activate the default function: rotating the infotainment touchscreen. Press and hold this button to display the customization interface. Customized functions include rotating the infotainment touchscreen, photo-taking with vehicle data recorder* and locking*.
- If the custom button has been customized to a certain function, press this button to activate the function, and press and hold this button to display the customization interface to customize again or cancel customization.

**Panoramic view** 

- When the panoramic view button is pressed, the infotainment system enters the panoramic mode.
  - Turns panoramic view off in panoramic view mode, turns it on when it is not in the mode.

**Right buttons**

**Roller** 

Infotainment System

- Roll up the roller: increase the volume in a single step until the maximum volume (12 gears in a circle).
- Roll down the roller: decrease the volume in a single step until the minimum volume (12 gears in a circle).
- Press the roller downward: to mute.
  - The multimedia is in mute status now. The mute status can only be released by press the roller or the mute switch on PAD, and adjusting the volume cannot release the mute status.

Instrument cluster

- Roll up the roller:
  - Select the secondary/tertiary menu items upward in the instrument cluster menu mode.
- Roll down the roller:
  - Select the secondary/tertiary menu items downward in the instrument cluster menu mode.

**Left/Right buttons** 

Infotainment System

- In radio mode:
  - Press ◁ to play the previous radio station.
  - Press ▷ to play the next radio station.
- In USB/Bluetooth music/third-party music APP and other modes:
  - Press ◁ to play the previous track (track number -1).
  - Press ◁ to select the previous entry in the Bluetooth Call History and Contacts interfaces.
  - Press ▷ to play the next track (track number +1).
  - Press ▷ to select the next entry in the Bluetooth Call History and Contacts interfaces.

Instrument cluster

- In the menu mode:

- Press ◁ to switch it to a left menu and its submenus.
- Press ▷ to switch it to a right menu and its submenus.

- Set the charging reservation time:
  - Press the ◁ / ▷ button to choose hour or minute.

**Phone button** 

- Press this button to make or receive a call. (The audio system is muted at the same time.)
- When the system is in a Bluetooth unrelated interface and Bluetooth is disconnected, press this button for the system to skip to the Bluetooth Connected interface. If Bluetooth is connected, press this button for the system to skip to the main dialing interface.
- After entering a phone number on the Dial screen or selecting a record on the Call Log or Contacts screen, press this button to dial the number.
- When Bluetooth is connected, but no phone number is entered on the Dial screen, press this button to switch to the Call Log screen. Press this button again to call the first dialed number on the call history.

**Voice recognition** 

- Press this button for the infotainment touchscreen to switch to the voice recognition screen.

**Instrument cluster menu/return button** 

- When the instrument cluster is not in the menu mode, press Instrument cluster/Back to show the instrument cluster menu.
- When the instrument cluster is in menu mode, press this button to return to the upper-level screen, or to exit the menu if there is no upper-level screen.
- On the Bluetooth call screen, press it to end the call.

**MODE button**

- Selecting a mode: Press the Mode button to switch between media apps, peripherals, and pre-installed third-party audio/video apps.

**Horn** 

Press the horn button area to honk the horn, and release to stop honking.

**REMINDER**

- Observe the traffic laws and use the horn properly.

**CAUTION**

- Avoid pressing honking for too long, as the horn may be damaged.

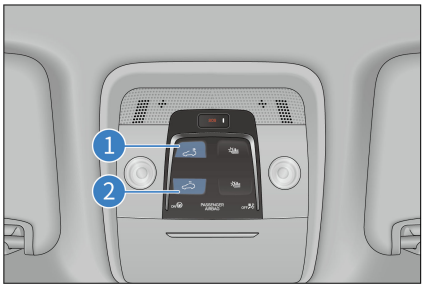
## Sunroof Switch*

The sunroof can only be operated when the vehicle is powered on or when the power-off delay has not expired.

**Opening the Sunroof**

- Press and hold the sunroof open button① to manually open the sunroof. Release the button to stop the sunroof at its current position.
- Press the sunroof open button① and release immediately to tilt the sunroof for ventilation. Press it again to automatically open the sunroof to the two-thirds position. Press it again to fully open the sunroof. Press

button① or button② midway to stop the sunroof at its current position.

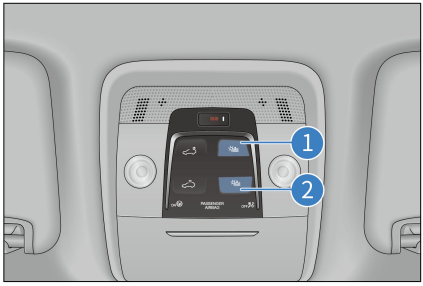



**Closing the sunroof**

- Press and hold the button② to close the sunroof. The sunroof will stop if the button is released.
- If the sunroof has been initialised, releasing the sunroof close button② immediately after touching it closes the sunroof automatically. For the sunroof to stop at its current position, press the① or ②button midway.

**Opening the sunshade**

- Press and hold the sunshade open button① to open the sunshade manually. Release the button midway to stop the sunshade.
- Release the sunshade open button① immediately after touching it. The sunshade opens automatically. For the sunshade to stop at its current position, touch the① or button② midway.




**Closing the sunshade**

- Press and hold the sunshade close button② to close the sunshade manually. Release the button midway to stop the sunshade at its current position.
- If the sunshade has been initialised, releasing the sunshade close button② immediately after touching it closes the sunshade automatically. For the sunshade to stop at its current position, touch the① or button② midway.

**CAUTION**

- When opening or closing the sunroof sunshade, avoid forceful contact with its curtain, to prevent damage.

**Sunshade linkage function**

When the sunroof is opened, the sunshade will be opened together with the sunroof.

**Anti-pinch**

If the sunroof or sunshade closing process is obstructed by anything, it will stop and slightly retract.

**WARNING**

- Keep clear of the sunroof when it is opening or closing, or severe injury may occur.
- Passengers must refrain from sticking hands or their heads out through the sunroof. Otherwise, severe injury or even death may occur.

**CAUTION**

- Trying to open the sunroof in outside temperatures below 0°C

**CAUTION**

or when it is covered in snow or frost may damage the sunroof or its motor.

**Initialization**

With the vehicle powered on, when the signal remains valid, and the sunroof is not initialized, try the following operations to initialize the settings:

1. Press and hold the sunroof closing switch to make the sunroof move to the fully closed position and stall for 400ms, and then the sunroof initialization is completed.
2. After the sunroof has been initialized and is fully closed, press and hold the sunshade closing switch to make the sunshade run to the fully closed position and stall for 400ms, and then the sunshade initialization is completed.

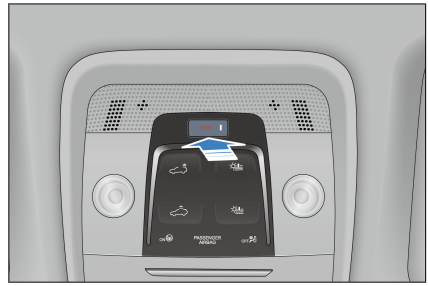
**CAUTION**

- During the whole initialization process, press and hold the sunroof/sunshade opening or closing button until the sunroof/ sunshade is fully opened or closed.

## E-Call Switch*

**E-Call**

- E-Call refers to emergency call. Press down on the SOS button (duration: 1s≤t≤10s), and E-Call is triggered if this button is not pressed again within 5 seconds after the initial press.



- If users press the SOS button by mistake, they can press the SOS button again within 5 seconds to cancel the call.
- If an airbag deploys or a severe collision is detected, E-Call is triggered automatically.
- Upon triggering, the E-Call system automatically makes an emergency call and communicates the minimum set of data (MSD) to a Public Safety Answering Point(PSAP).

**REMINDER**

- If the SOS button is pressed and held for over 20 seconds, SOS is deemed to have permanently short-circuited (i.e. the button is stuck). Under this circumstance, E-Call cannot be triggered manually.
- E-Call cannot be canceled manually after being triggered. The E-Call system will begin 60-minute callback time after the call is hung up by the public safety answering point or is not answered when it has been dialed 10 consecutive times.
- During the POST of E-Call system, the indicator flashes quickly at 2 Hz; when the E-Call system works normally without any fault, the indicator stays ON; during a

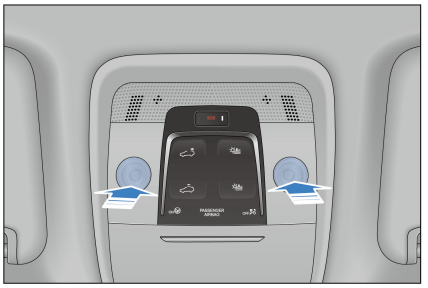
**REMINDER**

voice call triggered by the E-Call system, the indicator flashes at 1 Hz; when the voice call ends, the indicator stays ON; when the GPS signal is weak, the indicator flashes slowly at 0.5 Hz, and stays ON when the GPS signal returns to normal; when the E-Call system detects a serious fault, the indicator remains OFF.

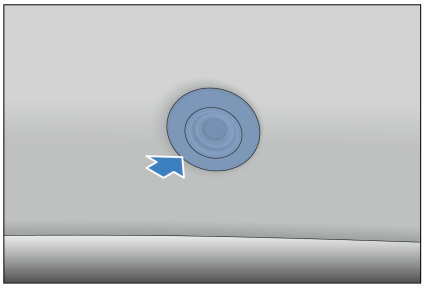
## Interior Lights

**Front/side interior lights**

- Front Interior Lights



- Side Interior Lights



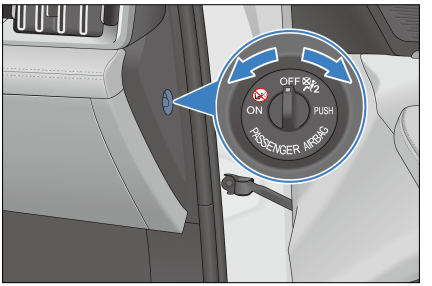
When the vehicle power is not OFF and the "DOOR" switch is turned on, if this switch is pressed with the door open, the interior light switches from high to low light, and does not go out. When the vehicle is powered off and the "DOOR" switch is turned on, the light goes out after a period of time if the door is opened. If there are other operations during this period, the timer will be restarted. (The user can slide down the status bar on the top of the infotainment touchscreen to open the Quick interface and turn on or off the "DOOR" switch)

**Ambient Lights***

To control the brightness, colour and area of the ambient light, go to multimedia touchscreen →Vehicle Settings→Ambient Light.

## Passenger Airbag (PAB) Switch

- The front passenger front airbag can be deactivated if the car is equipped with a passenger airbag switch.
- The switch is located on the passenger side of the dashboard and is accessible when the passenger's door is open.




- The front passenger airbag indicator is located on the ceiling.
- Check that the switch is in the required position.
- Enable or disable the front passenger airbag according to the use of the front passenger seat:

- When the switch is ON, the front passenger airbag is activated. The front passenger airbag indicator "PASSENGER AIRBAG" is solid on, "ON" and  come on, and "OFF" and  are off. The front passenger airbag deploys in the event of a moderate to severe collision that meets the necessary deployment conditions.
- When the switch is OFF, the front passenger airbag is deactivated. The passenger airbag indicator "PASSENGER AIRBAG" is solid on, "ON" and  are off, and "OFF" and  come on. The front passenger airbag do not deploys in the event of a moderate to severe collision thatmeets the necessary deployment conditions.

**WARNING**

- Never use a rear-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat with an activated passenger airbag. Failure to do so can result in serious personal injury or death.
- When the front passenger seat is occupied with an adult, the passenger airbag switch must be turned to "ON" to always keep the front passenger airbag active.
- If the front passenger airbag remains active when the passenger airbag switch is off, immediately contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

**CAUTION**

- To prevent damage to the airbag system, only operate the PAB switch when the ignition is OFF.
- It is the driver's responsibility to confirm that the PAB switch is in the correct position for the passenger sitting in the front passenger seat.

# 04 USING AND DRIVING

Charging/Discharging Instructions ..... 96
Battery ..... 111
Usage Guidelines ..... 114
Starting and Driving ..... 128
Driver Assistance ..... 138
Other Main Functions ..... 182

# Charging/ Discharging Instructions

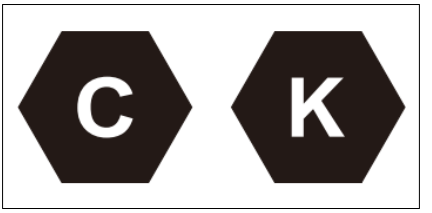
## Charging Instructions

**Charging Safety Warnings**

- Charging equipment uses high-voltage current. Minors are prohibited to charge the vehicle or touch the charging equipment. Keep them away from the vehicle during charging.
- If you use any medical electronic device, such as a transplantable cardiac pacemaker or transplantable cardiac vascular defibrillator, check with the manufacturer of the medical electronic device for the impact of charging on the electronic device before charging, so as to prevent the charging from affecting the electronic medical device and causing serious personal injury.
- Charge the vehicle in a safe environment (away from liquid, fire, or heat sources).
- Before charging, ensure that the vehicle charging port, power supply socket, and charger connector are free of foreign matters such as water, and ensure that the metal terminals are not damaged or affected by rust or corrosion. Otherwise, please do not charge the vehicle.
- Use only certified charging equipment specifically designed for electric vehicles and consistent with local standards:
  - To avoid charging failure or fire, do not modify, disassemble, or repair the charging equipment and related ports.
  - Uncertified products are strictly prohibited.
- To reduce the risk of electric shock and personal injury, never operate the equipment with wet hands and touch the exposed metal of the charging port or charging base.
- Do not conduct vehicle repairs during charging.
- Always observe the following charging precautions to prevent damage to the vehicle:
  - Do not touch the metal connection of the charging port, charger, or plug.
  - Do not shake the charger.
  - Do not charge or touch the vehicle in thunderstorm weather. Lightning strikes may cause damage to the charging equipment and personal injuries.
- Always unplug the charging and discharging equipment and close the charging port hatch before driving.

**Compatiblity of Vehicle and Charging Infrastructure**

The signs are located on the vehicle's charging socket, componets of the local charging infrastructure (charging station, socket) and on the charging cable.




The signs refer to standardized charging systems in accordance with DIN EN 62196.

**Charging Precautions**

- AC and DC charging* can be carried out in any power supply position. To ensure safety, it is recommended to power off the vehicle before charging. The vehicle can not be powered OK during charging.
- When the external power supply is cut off for a short time and then recovered again, BYD charging equipment automatically restarts charging, without the need for reconnecting.
- If the charging port hatch and charger are frozen, do not forcibly open the charging port hatch or pull out the charger.
- Precautions for avoiding damages to charging equipment:
  - Before starting the vehicle, make sure that the charging device is disconnected, as the charging device locking mechanism can cause damage to the charging device and the vehicle if the charging connector is not inserted in place and the vehicle is driven with the transmission gear engaged.
  - Do not close the charging port hatch when the charging port protection cover is open.
  - Do not pull or twist the charging cable with force.
  - Prevent the charging equipment from suffering any mechanical impact.
  - Do not store or use the charging equipment at a temperature above 55°C.
  - Do not expose the charging equipment to heat.
- Precautions before charging:
  - Do not open the charge port door forcibly when it is locked.
  - Make sure that the charging connector and charge port are free of foreign objects, and that the protective cap of the charging connector terminal does not get loose or deformed.
  - Hold the charging connector with one hand, align the connector with the charge port and push it in, making sure that they are properly connected.
- Precautions during charging:
  - The A/C can be used as normal while the vehicle is being charged. To ensure the charging power, it is recommended not to turn on the A/C.
  - It is recommended that no one stay in the vehicle during charging.
  - It is recommended to park the vehicle in a ventilated area during charging.Do not block the air intake grille.
  - It is normal that the charging power may fluctuate a short time as displayed on the instrument cluster when the battery is heated during charging.
  - During charging, the expected remaining time for a full charge is displayed on the instrument cluster. It is normal that the remaining time to full charge may vary slightly, depending on the temperatures, SOC, and charging facilities.
  - During charging, battery cooling may start, and the compressor, fan and other components work when necessary. It is normal that there will be some noise under the hood.
  - Before charging is completed, battery equalization is activated to improve

the service life, which may prolong the charging time.

- Precautions after Charging:
  - Stop charging first and make sure the charge port is unlocked.
  - Remove the charging connector.
  - Do not forcibly pull out the charger when the charging port is locked for fear of damaging the charging port.
  - After the charger is unplugged, reinsert the charging port protection cover and close the port hatch to prevent water or foreign matters that may affect the normal use.
- Battery temperatures that are too low or too high can compromise vehicle charging performance.
  - In the case of low-temperature charging, battery thermal management can improve the lowtemperature charging ability, but the charging time is prolonged and the heating power consumption is increased.These are normal phenomenons.
  - In cold regions, it is recommended to charge the vehicle indoors with heating.
  - In hot regions, it is recommended to charge the vehicle in a cool and ventilated place.
- Recommendations for improving the driving experience:
  - Charge the vehicle immediately when the SOC bar on the instrument cluster reaches the red area, for it indicates that the high-voltage battery is about to run out and failure to do so reduces the battery life.
  - To improve your experience, it is recommended that you charge the vehicle immediately after using it, as the battery is relatively hot and has better charging performance.

**General Charging Troubleshooting**

| Fault | Possible Cause | Solution |
|---|---|---|
| Charging unavailable: but battery cannot be charged. | Charging card in arrears or faulty charging pile. | Consult card balance or contact charging station staff. |
| | Improper connection of AC charging adapter | Confirm whether the charger switch is released, and ensure the proper charger plug length and connection position of the charging equipment. |
| | Over-discharge of 12V battery | Connect the plug with a 12V power supplied from other vehicles. After the vehicle is started, the 12V battery starts to be charged. |
| | Standard 230V 50Hz 10A grounded socket is de-energized | Confirm whether the overload protection of the power supply has been triggered. Please use another outlet. |
| | Vehicle or AC charging connector failure | Check for power system fault/failure warning light or message on the instrument cluster. If found, stop |

| Fault | Possible Cause | Solution |
|---|---|---|
| | | charging and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider. |
| | The highvoltage battery temperature is too low or too high | Warm up or cool down the high-voltage battery. Keep the vehicle in an environment with appropriate temperature and charge it when the temperature becomes normal. |
| | High-voltage battery fully charged | Charging is stopped automatically when the high-voltage battery is fully charged. |
| Charging interrupted | Charging cable is not connected properly. | Confirm whether the charging cable is firmly connected. |
| | Charging connection switch is pressed. | Charging is stopped when the charging adapter switch is pressed and reconnect the adapter to start charging. |
| | Power failure | After the power supply is restored within a certain period of time, it is necessary to reconnect the charging adapter to start charging. |
| | High-voltage battery temperature is too high. | After the charging stops automatically, charge the battery after it cools down. |
| | Vehicle or charging pile failure | If there is any fault prompt for the charging pile or the vehicle, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider. |



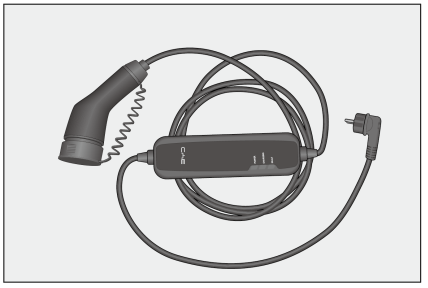
## Charge Port Cover

- **Inspection before Charging**
  - Ensure that power supply equipment, charging connector, charge port, and charging connection device are free of defects, such as cable wear, rusted ports, cracked casings, or foreign objects in the ports.
  - Do not charge the vehicle when the metal terminal of the power plug/ outlet or the charger/charging port is damaged or loosely connected due to rust, corrosion or ablation.
  - When the charging connector, port, power plug, or socket is visibly stained or damp, wipe them with a dry and clean cloth to ensure the connection is dry and clean.
  - Do not charge in any of these cases. Otherwise, personal injury may occur due to short circuit or electric shock.
- Protect the charging equipment against water contact on rainy days.

**Household Portable AC Charging**

1. **Equipment**

- It consists of a power plug(complying with local standards), charger, plug/charger protection cover, a connecting cable and function box, referred to as on-board charging. The power plug is connected to the standard household power socket, and the AC charger is connected to the AC charging port of the vehicle.



- The power socket shall be a household socket conforming to relevant national standards to avoid circuit damage and tripping caused by high-power charging, so as not to affect the normal use of other equipment.
- The use of special AC circuit and power supply socket (230V, 10A) is recommended.
- Charging time: Refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster.

**WARNING**

- The highest working temperature allowed for the product is 50°C, and store the product in a cool and dry place when it is not in use.
- When charging, do not place the equipment in the boot, under the front of the vehicle, or near the tyres.
- When using the equipment, prevent it from getting rolled over by the vehicle, dropped, or trampled on.
- Never drop the equipment or pull it directly by its cable. Take caution when moving the equipment.
- It is not recommended to use any additional wire or adapter/connector.
- Do not use the charging equipment when the household power socket cable gets softened and the charger is damaged, like worn cables and broken insulating layers.
- Do not use the equipment when the charging connector or power socket experiences a breakage, crack or other exposed damage.
- The charging cable must not be placed in a spiral during charging, as this will affect heat dissipation.

**REMINDER**

- Please contact a BYD authorized service provider and select an appropriate power supply as required for the charging equipment.
- Charging equipment grounding instructions: The equipment must be well grounded. The equipment is provided with a GND wire connecting the GND point of the equipment and the power plug. The power

**REMINDER**

plug must be matched with a properly-installed and well-grounded power outlet.

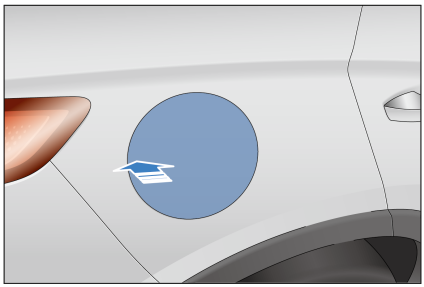
- When charging with an on-board charger, please activate the anti-theft alarm.

**CAUTION**

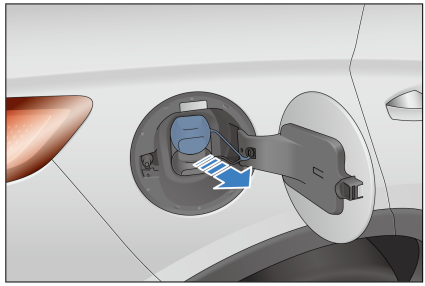
- The charging cable must not be placed in a spiral during charging, as this will affect heat dissipation.
- See the charging instructions for specific charging precautions.

2. **Charging**

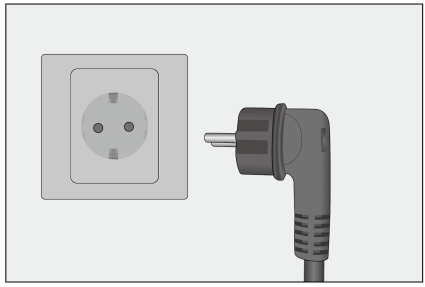
- Unlock the vehicle and open the charging port cover.
- Open the charge port cover:
  - Unlock the vehicle and press the charging port cover to open it automatically.



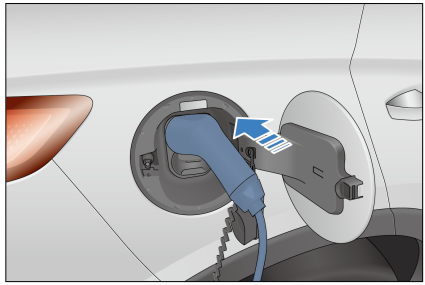
- Open the upper cover of the charging port protection cover and keep the lower cover closed.



- Connect the power supply terminal:
  - Insert the on-board charger plug into the household power outlet; then, the power indicator (red) of the charger functional box will stay on.



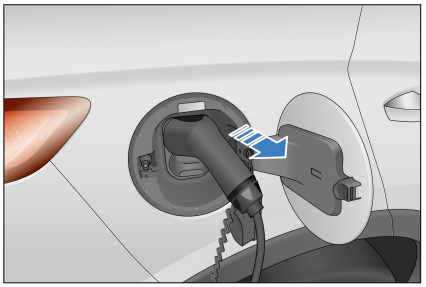
- Connect the vehicle charging port
  - Insert the on-board charger into the charging port and lock it securely.
  - Once the charger is connected properly, the charging connection indicator on the instrument cluster goes on. The charging indicator of the on-board charger will flash (green).



- In the charging process, charging parameters and the charging sign are displayed on the instrument cluster.

3. **Stopping charging**

- Stop charging:
  - When the vehicle is fully charged, charging stops automatically.
  - To stop charging in advance, go to the next step.
- Disconnect the charger from the charging port:
  - If the charging port anti-theft lock on the PAD is activated, press the unlock button on the key or press the microswitch on the door handle (when the key is nearby) and pull out the charger.
  - If the charging port anti-theft lock on the PAD is deactivated, the charger can be pulled after full-charged. If it is in the charging state, press the unlock button on the key or press the microswitch on the door handle (when the key is nearby) and pull out the charger.
  - If the charging port anti-theft lock on the PAD is smart anti-theft, the charger can be pulled after full-charged. When it is not full-charged, press the unlock button on the key or press the microswitch on the door handle (when the key is nearby) and pull out the charger.



**REMINDER**

- To unlock the vehicle, press the unlocking button on the key (during charging in the OFF gear) or the microswitch on the door handle (when the key is nearby).
- When the charging port anti-theft lock is activated, please unlock the vehicle first to unlock this anti-theft lock, and then pull the charger out within 30s, or the antitheft lock will re-lock.
- The working mode of the charging port anti-theft lock can be set through the infotainment system. See “Control Function of Charging Port Electric Lock” in this chapter for the setting process.
- If the charging connector cannot be removed after unlocking, try a few more unlocking attempts. If that does not work, try emergency unlocking. For the operating procedure, see "Charging Port Emergency Unlocking" in "Control Function of Charging Port Electric Lock” for details..

- Disconnect the power plug.
- Close the vehicle charging port protective cover and charging port cap.
- Place the on-board charger into a bag in the boot for proper storage.

**Charging with DC Charging Piles**

1. **Equipment descriptions**

- Charge the vehicle with DC charging piles in public places, which are generally installed in specific charging stations.
- Equipment specifications: Please view the relevant charging pile instructions.

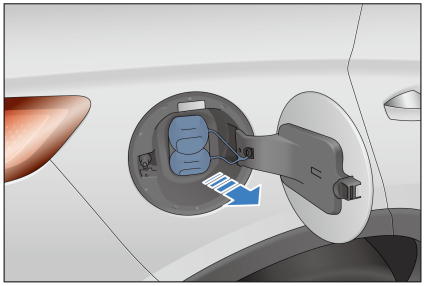
- Charging time: refer to the charging time prompt on the instrument cluster.

2. **Charging Instructions**

Connect the vehicle to a DC charging pile by the charging connector of this pile to begin DC charging.

Instant charging method:

- Before charging, power off the vehicle.
- Unlock the vehicle and open the charge port door and cap:
  - For the specific operation, refer to the relevant procedures for Household Portable AC Charging. Open the charging port hatch first and open the charging port protection cover from the top down.



- Connect the vehicle charging port:
  - Connect the charging connector of the charging pile to the charge port, and lock it securely in place.
- Operate the charging equipment to start charging.
- The charging connection indicator on the instrument cluster lights up.
- In the charging process, the instrument cluster displays relevant charging parameters and the charging sign.

3. **Stopping charging**

- End the charging:
  - The charging pile stops charging automatically when the vehicle SOC reaches 100% or the value preset by the user.
- Disconnect the charger from the charging port:
  - After the instrument cluster displays that charging is completed, pull out the charging connector.
- After DC charging with a charging pile, properly place the charging equipment. Put the charging connector to the designated position of the charging pile.
- Close the charge port cap (from bottom to top) and the port door.

**REMINDER**

- During charging at a high/low temperature, it is normal that the battery thermal management performance may be affected by the A/C in the passenger compartment, causing an extension in the charging time.

**CAUTION**

- After charging, if the charging connector cannot be pulled out, please contact customer service personnel for the charging pile immediately.
- See the charging instructions for specific charging precautions.

**WARNING**

- See section "Charging Instructions" for charging safety warnings.

### Smart Charging

- The charging mode can be set on the infotainment system. To access the setting:
  - Go to the setting interface through the Smart Charging APP in the infotainment application list.
  - Go to the "Smart Charging" setting interface through (infotainment system) → New Energy;
  - Go to the setting interface by calling "Hi, BYD. Turn on the Smart Charging"; "Hi, BYD. I want to use the Smart Charging"; and "Hi, BYD. Please turn on the Smart Charging".
- Exit the Smart Charging screen by tapping the return key /home key or using intelligent voice:
  - Exit the setting interface by calling "Hi, BYD. Turn off the Smart Charging"; "Hi, BYD. Exit the Smart Charging mode".

### Setting Page

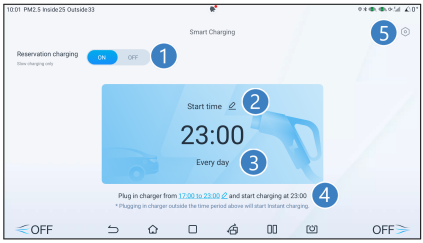
①Reservation Charging ON/OFF

②Start time of charging

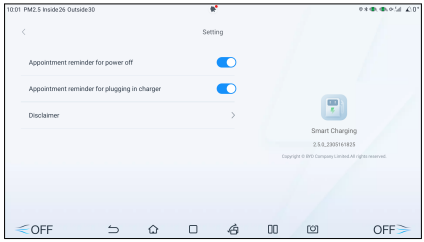
③Period

④Charging waiting time*

⑤Setting




- The factory setting mode is the Instant Charging, so Reservation Charging is turned off.
- To activate the Reservation Charging, tap the Reservation Charging Button①, set the Start Time② of charging and Period③, and tap "OK" to save the settings.
- After successful setting of the Reservation Charging, a prompt of the charging start time is given by the infotainment system if the charger is connected or the power button is pressed within the charging waiting time to power off the vehicle; at this time, you can switch to Instant Charging as needed.
- Tap the Smart Charging icon ⑤ to turn off the "Plug in charger" reminder and "Power off" reminder in the "Reservation Charging Reminder".




**REMINDER**

- The instant charging on PAD is effective only for current preset. To cancel all presets, please turn off the preset charging switch on the setting interface.
- The smart charging function is only applicable to the BYD AC charging pile. If it needs to be applied to public charging facilities, please confirm that the facilities support vehicle-end reservations.

**REMINDER**

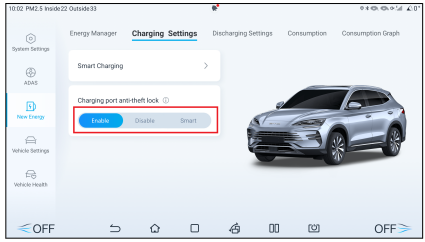
- In the event of low battery, the vehicle is charged to the minimum level before scheduled charging begins. In this process, the infotainment system still gives reminder messages for power-off and charging connector connection, and a related message is displayed at the lower part of the instrument cluster.

**CAUTION**

- The smart charging (including Reservation Charging) function is only developed for AC slow charging equipment distributed by BYD. When using AC slow charging equipment not certified by BYD, this function shall be turned off; otherwise, the charging equipment may not respond, resulting in failure to reservation or immediate charging, resulting in power shortage of the vehicle and low battery.

## Control Function of Charging Port Anti-theft Lock

The charging port of the vehicle has an anti-theft function to prevent theft. This function is deactivated by default. To activate the anti-theft lock function, go to (infotainment system) → New Energy → Charging Port Anti-theft Lock Settings and select Activate.




- In the Activate/Smart/Deactivate mode, users can unlock and unplug the charger in the following ways during charging:
  - Press the unlock button on the smart key when the vehicle is powered off.
  - Press the microswitch next to the exterior door handle of the driver's door.
  - Press the central door lock below the window inside the driver's door.
  - If the vehicle is fully charged, the charging plug will automatically unlock (only in "smart"/"deactivated" mode).

| No. | Electric Lock Anti-theft Mode Status | Four-door anti-theft lock state | Whether the vehicle is fully charged | Whether the charger can be unplugged |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | Activated | Locking | / | No |
| 2 | Activated | Unlocked | / | Yes |
| 3 | Smart/ Deactivated | Locking | Yes | Yes |

| No. | Electric Lock Anti-theft Mode Status | Four-door anti-theft lock state | Whether the vehicle is fully charged | Whether the charger can be unplugged |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | No | No |
| 4 | Smart/ Deactivated | Unlocked | / | Yes |

- Unlock the charger during charging, the instrument shows reminder meaning that the electrical lock of AC charger is unlocked and the charging power is limited. The charging power is 0kW in this situation. Wait for 30s or lock manually to continue charging process.

**CAUTION**

- After unlocking the charger, it can be pulled out within 30 seconds. After 30 seconds, it will lock again.
- When the vehicle is fully charged after locking, the charging port anti-theft lock is automatically unlocked in the "Deactivated" mode, and must be manually unlocked in the "Activated" mode using the above methods.

**REMINDER**

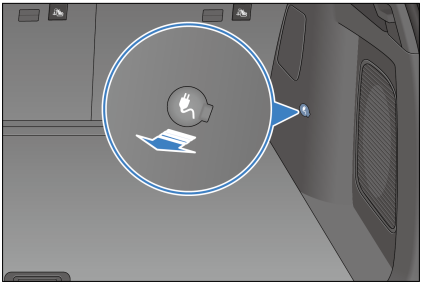
- If any abnormality or failure of the function is found, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

**Emergency Unlocking**

- When the electric lock fails and the charger cannot be unplugged, try to unplug it by manually unlocking the charge port.
- When the charging port hatch cannot be opened in case of failure of the actuator or low-voltage battery, try to open the charging port hatch by manual emergency unlocking.

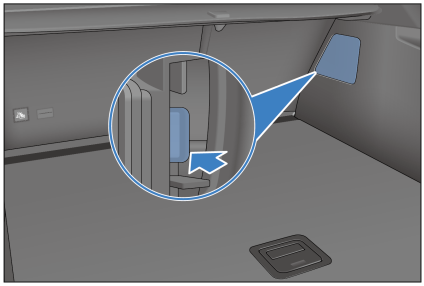
**Electric Lock Cable of Charger:**

1. Open the boot lid and find the lock cable on the right shield inside the boot.
2. Unbuckle the cable clip and pull up the lock cable to unlock the charger.
3. Reset the emergency cable latch after the unlocking is complete.



**Charging Port Cover Emergency Unlocking:**

1. Remove the shield from the boot.
2. Manually push the actuator unlocking tab down.
3. Press the charging port cover to unlock.



**REMINDER**

- In the event of abnormality or function failure, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

## Memory setting function

- When the vehicle runs in dual modes, the SOC balance function is available to reserve power for such operations as rapid acceleration. When the vehicle runs stably, the SOC fluctuates around the setting value.
- The vehicle controller can memorize the SOC setting value set last time.

**CAUTION**

- When the vehicle runs stably at a certain speed after the engine startup, a part of the torque output by the engine drives the generator to generate electricity and charge the power battery.
- If the difference between the current power and the SOC set value is large, it may take a long time to reach the set value.
- The SOC setting range may change depending on the vehicle state or the environment that the vehicle is in.

**SOC Setting**

- The State of Charge(SOC)means the state that the user expects the vehicle to reach during driving. Pull down the status bar on the top of the infotainment or go to (infotainment system) → New Energy → Energy Manager for SOC settings.
- Set SOC to the target remaining power
  - If it is convenient to charge the vehicle at the destination, it is recommended to lower the SOC set value to make full use of the stored electric energy to drive the vehicle and save fuel consumption.
  - If it is inconvenient to charge the vehicle at the destination, it is recommended to increase the set value to maintain the battery SOC level of the vehicle and improve the driving experience.
  - In order to ensure the proper driving and riding experience, the vehicle automatically adjusts the SOC set value according to the altitude and ambient temperature.
- Intelligent /forced power protection function setting
  - Intelligent SOC hold: give priority to fuel economy and consider the demand for SOC hold.
  - Compulsory SOC hold: give priority to SOC hold, and keep the SOC level as close as possible to the set value.

**Energy Feedback Intensity Setting**

Go to the (infotainment system) → New Energy → Energy Manager to choose Standard or High mode of Energy feedback intensity according to driving habits.

- If the mode is not set by the user, the factory default setting is always maintained.
- The set value is memorized and becomes the default value after each power-on.

### In-Situ Power Generation Function

When the SOC is lower than a certain value during parking, the engine drives the alternator to charge the high-voltage battery. During power generation, it is normal that the engine speed is different from the normal idle speed. The in-situ power generation is disabled until the SOC is equal to or higher than a certain value.

**REMINDER**

- During the in-situ power generation, the instrument cluster may show a slightly lower generated power due to the consumption of electrical appliances.

### Mode Memory Function

1. In the case of high SOC, the vehicle is automatically switched to EV mode when it is powered on. Driving in this mode is highly recommended.
2. In the case of moderate SOC, the vehicle memorizes the last driving mode when it is powered on. The driver can manually select the required mode through the mode switch now.

### Power Generation by Pressing the Accelerator Pedal

- With the vehicle in P gear and HEV mode, when SOC is lower than a certain value, press the accelerator pedal to trigger the power generation function.

## Discharging Instructions

- The vehicle supports the Vehicle To Load (VTOL) function.

**WARNING**

- Do not touch the metal terminals of the discharging strip and the vehicle charging port during discharging.
- Stop the discharging device in case of abnormality such as odour and smoke during discharging. For discharge safety warnings, see Charging Safety Warnings***P96***.
- Store the product in a cool and dry place when it is not in use.
- To prevent the charging equipment from being rolled over by the vehicle, falling, and being trampled during discharging, do not place the equipment under the boot and the vehicle's front end or near the tyres.
- Never drop the equipment or move it by pulling it directly by the cable.
- Do not use the discharging equipment when the discharging device, cable, or power strip is worn, the insulation layer is broken, or there is any other damage.

**REMINDER**

- Try to use this function when the SOC is high.
- The static power consumption of the vehicle will increase when the vehicle is powered off and the VTOL connection device is connected for an extended

**REMINDER**

period without any output. It is recommended to remove the discharging/charging connector when the device is not used.

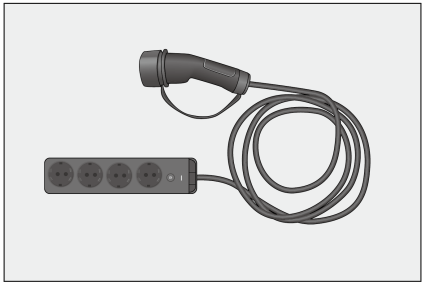
**CAUTION**

- Disconnect the discharging equipment refers to:***P97***.
- Before VTOL discharges, ensure that the load is turned off.
- During VTOL, the engine is started when the battery level is low. Please do not use the VTOL function in a confined space or any other place adjacent to flammables and explosives.
- When VTOL discharges externally, it will turn off when the allowable discharge power is exceeded. At this time, please reduce the power of the equipment, and plug/unplug the discharging equipment again.

**VTOL Method***

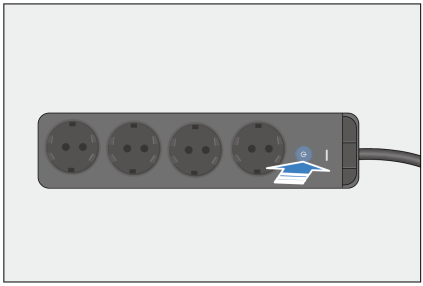
**1. Equipment Description:**

- Vehicle to Load(VTOL)： It consists of a discharger, socket, cable, and discharger protection cover.



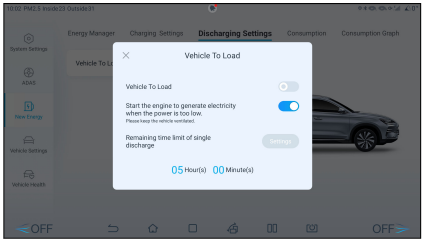
**2. Discharging Instructions**

- Before discharging, disarm the anti-theft alarm system.
- Unlock the charging port hatch switch, and open the charging port hatch and protection cover.
  - Unlock the charging port cover, then open the port cover and charging port protection cover on the right side of the vehicle(refer to the relevant procedures for "Household Portable AC Charging”).
- Inspection before discharging:
  - Make sure that the VTOL adapter is free of any abnormalities such as shell rupture, cable wear, and plug rust.
  - Ensure that there is no water or foreign material inside the charge port and that metal terminals are not damaged and free from rust or corrosion. Do not discharge if any of the above conditions is found; otherwise, short circuit or electric shock so caused could lead to personal injury.
- Connect the discharge connection device:
  - Connect the VTOL discharger into the charging port reliably.
- Discharging starts:
  - Press the switch on the discharging outlet and wait for a few seconds. If the outlet indicator (red) stays on, the outlet can be used.
  - After the connection is made, discharge begins and respective information is displayed on the instrument cluster.



### 3. Discharging Duration Setting Instructions

- After the vehicle is connected to the discharger, the VTOL function is automatically activated. At the same time, the countdown can be observed on the instrument cluster and the infotainment touchscreen. The default duration of single discharging on the infotainment touchscreen is 5 hours.
- To set VTOL, go to (multimedia system) → New Energy → Discharging Settings.
  - After the vehicle is connected to the discharger, tap the Vehicle To Load button to turn it on or off as needed.




  - When the vehicle is powered off and discharged to a low SOC, tap the "Start the engine to generate electricity when the power is too low" switch to enable the function if it is necessary to start the engine for continuous discharging.

**REMINDER**

- When the vehicle is powered ON and discharged to a low SOC, the vehicle automatically starts the engine for power generation without setting.

- Tap Settings on the Infotainment interface to switch to the discharging duration settings to set the required discharging duration.

**CAUTION**

- The discharging function cannot be enabled when the discharger is not connected. Tapping the "VTOL" button makes it go on for a while and then go off, which is normal.
- When the discharging is started, if the power of the vehicle is too low and the engine cannot be started for power generation or the discharging time is set too long, the vehicle cannot guarantee that it can discharge according to the set time, so the external discharging function will be turned off in advance, which is normal.

### 4. Stopping discharging

- Stop discharging:
  - Press the switch on the discharging outlet.
  - The following steps are only operated in an emergency (not recommended).
- Disconnect the discharging equipment:
  - Press the unlock button on the key or the microswitch on the door handle

(when the key is nearby), and pull out the discharging connector.

- Close the charging port protection cover and the charging port cover (refer to Household Portable AC Charging).
- Put the equipment in order:
  - After discharging, put the VTOL equipment into the bag in the boot.

# Battery

## High-voltage Battery

- The high-voltage battery is one of the power sources of the vehicle, which is located under the floor and can be recharged repeatedly. The high-voltage battery can be charged through the external power supply by means of household portable AC charging, AC charging pile charging, and also by the motor when the vehicle is being braked, coasting or the engine is started.

**CAUTION**

- As the high-voltage battery is arranged at the bottom of the vehicle, careful driving is recommended in case of bumpy roads.

**REMINDER**

- When the vehicle is powered ON, the high-voltage circuit is connected.
- When the high-voltage battery of a new vehicle is in a normal state, the driving range of the vehicle in pure electric mode varies due to different driving habits, road conditions, and temperatures as well as the use of power-consuming devices or not.
- In order to prolong the service life and ensure the safety of the battery, the battery system switches the charging mode to the trickle charging mode when the battery SOC is high, and the charging time may be lengthened.
- Due to the chemical characteristics of the battery itself, the battery capacity of the vehicle that has been used for a period of time has natural attenuation, and its pure electric range will be reduced. When the driving range of your vehicle in pure electric mode is shortened, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for checking. The store-side inspection can confirm whether the reduction of electric mileage is normal.

**High-voltage Battery Maintenance**

- To keep the battery at its best, charge it fully with a AC charging adapter on a regular basis (at least once a week).
- When the vehicle is not to be used for more than 7 days, it is recommended to keep the SOC between 40% and 60%, so as to prolong its service life. When the vehicle is not to be used for more than 3 months, it must be charged to 100% and then discharged to 40%~60% SOC, so as to avoid battery performance worsening or even damage.

**High-voltage Battery Heating Function in Low Temperature**

- In a low-temperature environment, the high-voltage battery heating system

starts up and heats the battery to speed up the low-temperature charging and ensure the power performance and driving range of the vehicle.

**REMINDER**

- The normal operating temperature of the high-voltage battery is within -35-60°C.
- Higher or lower operating temperatures of the high-voltage battery may prolong the charging time.

**CAUTION**

- In case of any fault of the high-voltage battery, please contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

**WARNING**

- Non-professionals are not allowed to open the power battery pack. Units or individuals will bear corresponding responsibilities for environmental pollution or safety accidents caused by unauthorized removal and disassembly of batteries.

**High-Voltage Battery Recycling**

How to scrap an NEV:

1. Take the vehicle to the BYD recycling service provider that will assess the residual value of the high-voltage battery.
2. Take the assessed vehicle to the recycling organisation to disassemble the high-voltage battery.
3. Take the battery to the recycling service provider which will buy back the battery.

**WARNING**

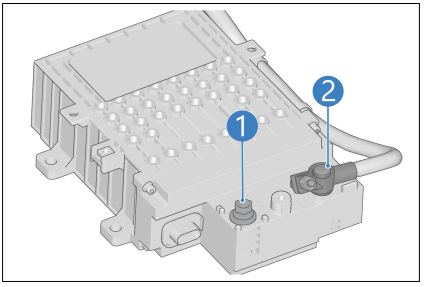
- New energy car owners have the responsibility and obligation to hand over waste high-voltage batteries to the recycling service outlet. Anyone who hands over a used high-voltage battery to any other organisation or individual, or removes/disassembles a high-voltage battery without authorisation, shall be liable for any environmental pollution or safety incident so caused.

## Starter iron battery

- The low-voltage battery used in this vehicle is a BYD self-developed lithium iron phosphate battery. The low-voltage battery features a smart charging function. When the high-voltage battery SOC is sufficient, the vehicle can enable the high-voltage battery to charge the low-voltage battery, so as to extend the endurance of the low-voltage battery.

①Positive pole

②Negative pole



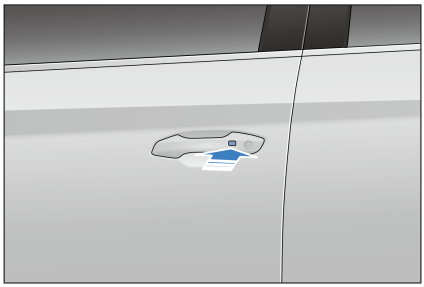
**REMINDER**

- When the vehicle is powered off for smart charging, it makes such a normal sound as when the vehicle is powered on.
- Make sure that all electrical equipment is turned off and the doors are closed when leaving the vehicle.

**Wakeup Function after Power Loss of the Vehicle**

**Wakeup by the front left door microswitch:**

- The low-voltage battery features the dormant/ wakeup function. After long-term parking, if the vehicle locating and unlocking cannot be realized with the smart key, the low-voltage battery may be in a dormant state. Then, press the microswitch on the front left door handle to wake up the low-voltage battery. After the vehicle is unlocked, it can be used normally.

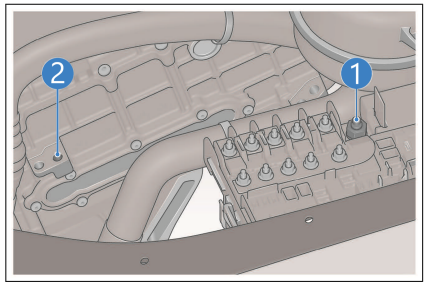


**Wakeup by Jump Start:**

- When the vehicle cannot be waked up and unlocked by the front left door microswitch, use the mechanical key to open the door. Then, a 12V power supply can be used to start the vehicle through two special cables for the jump start. In this case, the low-voltage battery SOC is low and the vehicle may become dormant again. Start the vehicle immediately and keep it started for more than 15 min to ensure that the low-voltage battery is fully charged.
- The jump start can only be carried out through the special interface of the front compartment fuse box. The connection terminals for the jump start are shown in the right figure.

①Positive terminal for the jump start in the front compartment fuse box

②Negative terminal for the jump start




If the vehicle cannot be woken up and started by the above operations, please contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

**CAUTION**

- It is recommended that the jump starting be done under the guidance of professionals, as the space for operating the under-bonnet PDB is limited and circuit-based risks are present.

**WARNING**

- It is strictly prohibited to connect the vehicle with other vehicles for a jump start when its OK indicator is off; otherwise, the 12V battery may be damaged.

**WARNING**

- When it is necessary to use a jump start for starting in case of low-voltage battery SOC or failure of normal use, please read this part of the Owner's Manual carefully and strictly follow the relevant instructions.
- The low-voltage battery contains an intelligent control module. Do not disassemble or damage the battery without permission in non-emergency situations.
- Please disconnect the negative terminal of the low-voltage battery before replacing the parts and repairing and checking the vehicle.
- Do not clean the low-voltage battery with liquid to avoid ingress of liquid into the battery.

**Smart Charging Function**

- Low 12V battery SOC triggers the smart charging function to extend the battery endurance.
- In case of low high-voltage battery SOC, the vehicle may start the engine for power generation to enable the smart charging function.
- The vehicle supports the smart charging function, so it is unnecessary to disconnect the negative terminal of the 12V battery in case of long-term parking.

**CAUTION**

- Low 12V battery SOC triggers the smart charging function, resulting in a decrease of the high-voltage battery SOC or the driving range in pure electric mode displayed on the instrument cluster, which is normal.
- After the vehicle is locked, a small amount of fuel will be consumed and a small amount of exhaust petrol will be discharged when the high-voltage battery is low enough to trigger the engine power generation function.

# Usage Guidelines

## Break-in Period

- If the powertrain is hard to start or frequently stops turning, inspect the vehicle immediately.
- If the powertrain makes any abnormal sounds, stop the vehicle for inspection.
- In case of serious coolant and lubricating oil leakage in the powertrain, pull over the vehicle for inspection.
- Break-in is required for the powertrain. It is recommended to carry out it for the first 2,000 km in "ECO" mode, drive smoothly, and avoid high-speed driving. The following precautions can effectively extend the service life of the vehicle:
  - Avoid pressing the accelerator pedal when starting and driving the vehicle.
  - Avoid overspeeding during driving.
  - Avoid emergency braking within the first 300 km.
  - Do not drive at a single speed for a long time.

- The use of HEV in the running-in period shall not be less than 50%.

## Trailer Towing

- **Towing capacity**
- The vehicle's towing capacity depends on various factors such as vehicle specifications, loads, road conditions, and trailer specifications. For a safer driving experience, avoid speeding and overloading. Please refer to the table below for specific parameters.
- The total trailer weight (including all cargo and optional equipment) and drawbar weight shall not exceed the limits outlined below:

| Item | 2WD | 4WD |
|---|---|---|
| Towing capacity (braked) [kg] | 750 | 1300 |
| Towing capacity (unbraked) [kg] | 750 | 750 |
| Max. tongue weight [kg] | 150 | 150 |

* Towing capacity: total trailer weight (including all cargo and optional equipment)

The max towing weight of 2WD model is 750kg. The width and height of goods, recreational vehicle, or devices should be close to the width and height of the trailer. If the former is over the latter, problems including insufficient power and quick power losing may be caused by increased wind drag.

A holder, of a relevant license for towing, is allowed to drive with a trailer attached, ensuring that the total mass (inclusive of the vehicle, the trailer and contents on the trailer) is less than 4,500kg.

**Tire pressure during towing**

- For towing a trailer, adjust the tire pressure to accommodate additional loads. Keep tires inflated to 270 kPa.
- For towing, the technically permissible maximum mass on the rear axle may be exceeded by no more than 15% and the technically permissible laden mass of the vehicle may be exceeded by no more than 100 kg. In these instances, the vehicle speed cannot exceed 100 km/h and the rear tire pressure must be at least 20 kPa above the tire pressure recommended for normal use.

**WARNING**

- The trailer tongue weight shall be at least 4% of the total trailer weight, without exceeding the maximum tongue weight stated in the table above. Unbalanced loads towards wheels or heavier loads at the rear may cause the trailer to sway, resulting in loss of vehicle control.
- Make sure no one rides in the trailer during towing.
- The maximum uphill gradient allowed is 12% when a trailer is towed.
- Always ensure that cargo is secured in the trailer and cannot move. Dynamic load movement may cause loss of vehicle control, resulting in serious injury or death.

**WARNING**

- To avoid potential accidents and serious personal injury, never exceed the towing capacity or maximum tongue weight.
- To avoid tire faults or loss of vehicle stability, never attempt to tow a trailer in case of a:
  - faulty tire ; or
  - temporarily repaired tire (such tires cannot sustain towing loads).
- Please observe applicable local laws and regulations regarding towing. Do not modify the vehicle without permission.
- Do not tow a trailer equipped with an electromagnetic brake.

**CAUTION**

- Do not tow a trailer in the running-in period.
- Before towing, be sure to:
  - inflate tires to the specified cold tire inflation pressure;

**Precautions for vehicle towing**

- Do not tow a trailer in the running-in period.
- Before towing, be sure to:
  - inflate tires to the specified cold tire inflation pressure;
  - understand and observe all local regulations and legal requirements regarding trailers;
  - adjust side mirrors to provide a clear rear view without significant blind spots;
  - keep the vehicle horizontal when the trailer hitch is connected. If the vehicle is tipped up at the front and down at the rear, check that towing loads do not exceed the towing capacity or the maximum ball vertical loading weight/tongue weight;
  - check that trailer lights and turn signals can operate normally;
  - check that the trailer brake works normally;
  - check that all towing components are securely tightened;
  - check that all trailer hitch components, accessories, and electrical connectors (if any) are in good condition and properly connected. If any problems are apparent, do not tow the trailer;
  - check that wheel chocks are available;
  - check that trailer loads are evenly distributed;
  - place heavy objects in the trailer near the axle whenever possible to reduce the interference with the combination vehicle in case of sway; and
  - make sure the trailer cable does not contact or drag on the ground and has enough slack for turning.
- Please put away the trailer hitch when the vehicle is not used to tow a trailer.
- Starting to drive:
  - Start the vehicle smoothly. Avoid sudden acceleration and emergency braking. Especially on a slippery road, the vehicle may be out of control due to slipping.
  - Crosswinds or rough roads may cause vehicle sway, leading to difficulties in controlling the vehicle.

In any situation, whenever you notice any slight sway of the vehicle, hold the steering wheel firmly with both hands and slow down gradually. Never attempt to eliminate sway by increasing the speed.

- When the vehicle is unladen, try to avoid towing a trailer with loads. If this is unavoidable, drive at a low speed due to improper load distribution.

- Braking:
  - Sudden braking may cause slipping, bottom scratches, or loss of control.
  - The vehicle braking distance increases when a trailer is towed. Therefore, at least double the normal following distance.
- Overtaking:
  - Towing a trailer increases the overall length of the vehicle. Overtaking requires a longer distance to return to the original lane.
- Reversing:
  - Reversing while towing a trailer is more difficult than ordinary reversing, so great care and extra practice are required.
  - When reversing, hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. Turn it left or right to make the trailer turn in the same direction. Always reverse at a low speed, and if possible, ask others for help.
- Turning:
  - When making a turn, keep the vehicle steady. Avoid bumps or sudden turns whenever possible. Activate turn signals before turning.
  - While turning, ensure a larger radius than usual to prevent the trailer from colliding with curbs, road signs, trees, or other obstacles.
- Parking on a grade:
  - Whenever possible, avoid parking on a grade. The grade shall be not greater than 12%. If parking on a grade is absolutely necessary, place wheel chocks under the trailer wheels:
    1. One person presses and holds the brake pedal;
    2. A second person places wheel chocks under the wheels on the downgrade side of tires;
    3. When chocks are in place, release the brake pedal and ensure the chocks can hold the weight of the vehicle and trailer (with AVH disabled).
    4. Shift the vehicle to P.

**CAUTION**

- Towing a trailer can negatively impact vehicle performance, durability, driving economy, and electric energy consumption.
- When a trailer is coupled, it is normal for the trailer's LED taillights to flash very slightly.

**WARNING**

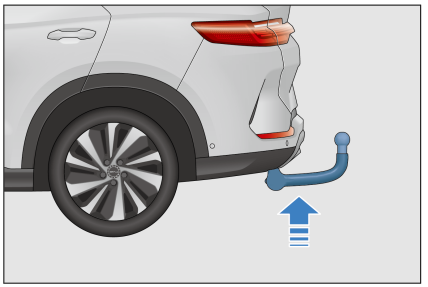
- If parking on a grade is necessary, always ensure that all trailer wheels have been securely chocked. Failure to do so can result in serious damage, injury, or death.

**Diagnosis for general vehicle towing faults**

| Fault | Possible cause | Solution |
|---|---|---|
| Failure to activate trailer mode | Vehicle speed: not 0 | Engage EPB, and activate the trailer mode again when the vehicle is stopped. |
| | Cable disconnected, or poor cable connection | Unplug the cable and reconnect it. |
| Trailer light fault | Poor cable connection | Unplug the cable and reconnect it. |
| | Blown fuse | Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. |
| Trailer indicator turning red | Accidental disconnection of trailer cable during driving | Pull over as soon as possible, and check whether the cable is properly connected; if not, reconnect it. If the cable is damaged, repair it as quickly as possible. |

**Driving with a trailer**

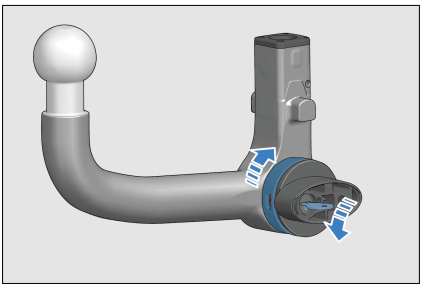
- Trailer hitch



- If the optional trailer hitch kit is selected by the user, an additional toolkit is provided for the trailer hitch.
- After use, remove the trailer hitch and place it into the dust bag. Place the bag in the toolkit to prevent rust.

**Installing the trailer hitch**

1. Remove the guard plate from the bottom of the rear bumper, and take out the hitch body from the storage bag.
2. Pull up the hitch housing dust cover.
3. Insert the key into the hitch's locking cylinder and turn it counterclockwise.
4. Press and hold the knob switch, while turning it clockwise to the red area.



5. Firmly grasp the hitch from the bottom and align the triangle marks on both sides of the hitch with the corresponding cutouts in the hitch housing.
6. Push the hitch into the hitch housing until the knob switch rotates counterclockwise by about 110° and automatically locks into the "Closed

Position". At this time, the knob switch is turned to the green area.

7. Visually check that the hitch is fully inserted into the housing. Try pulling down on the hitch to confirm that the hitch does not drop.
8. Turn the key clockwise to lock the hitch, take the key and store it properly (preferably inside the vehicle).
9. Close the dust cover to prevent dirt and debris from entering the lock.

**WARNING**

- Be sure to use the BYD SEAL U DM-i trailer hitch when towing a trailer. Never attempt to attach a different type of trailer hitch.

**Removing the trailer hitch**

1. Insert the key and turn it counterclockwise.
2. Press and hold the knob switch, while turning it clockwise to the red area.
3. Remove the hitch, turn the key clockwise to lock the hitch, and then remove the key.
4. Place the hitch body into the storage bag and store it in a secure location.

**CAUTION**

- Do not grasp the locking cylinder because it needs to rotate freely.
- The key can be removed only if the hitch is locked. This indicates a proper connection. Do not use the hitch if the key is not removed.
- If the hitch does not lock into the housing, it falls out when pulled down.

**CAUTION**

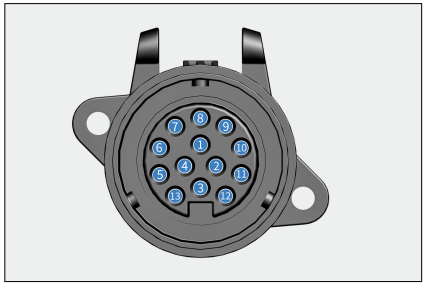
- BYD recommends making a note of the key code. You will need this code if you lose the key and need to order a replacement.
- To maintain the hitch, regularly grease its surfaces with non-resinous grease.

**WARNING**

- Be careful when turning the locking cylinder. If it does not lock into the "Open Position"/"Closed Position", it automatically retracts to its original "Closed Position"/"Open Position" and may pinch the fingers.

**Electrical connections**

- All trailers are equipped with taillights, brake lights, side marker lights and turn signals.
- To provide power for trailer lighting, a built-in 13-pin electrical connector is provided for the hitch.
- When the vehicle is stationary, plugging the trailer plug into the vehicle electrical connector automatically activates the trailer mode.



| | |
|---|---|
| 1 | Left turn signal |
| 2 | Rear fog light |
| 3 | Pins 1-8 GND |
| 4 | Right turn signal |
| 5 | Right taillight |
| 6 | Parking light |
| 7 | Left taillight |
| 8 | Reverse light |
| 9 | 12V power supply - permanent |
| 10 | 12V power supply - switch/ignition |
| 11 | Pin 10 GND |
| 12 | Reserved (not connected) |
| 13 | Pin 9 GND |

**CAUTION**

- The driver shall ensure that all electrical connections and all trailer lights are operating normally before and during towing.
- When the electrical connection device is not connected to the trailer interface, do not directly clean this device with a high-pressure water jet. Doing so may result in water entering and damaging the device.

**WARNING**

- Use only the electrical connection device designed by BYD. Do not directly splice or connect the trailer’ s electrical circuit using any other method. Doing so can damage the vehicle electrical system and cause faults.

**Guide for activating trailer mode**

- Preparation before connection
  - Take out the trailer hitch from the toolkit in the trunk and insert it into the reserved interface at the rear of the vehicle;
  - Shift the vehicle to R, and enable the towing assist function on the panoramic view screen;
  - Reverse the vehicle with the aid of the towing assist guide cursor in the reverse image, and make the trailer hitch ball close to the mechanical connecting device of the vehicle to be towed;
- Connecting the two vehicles
  - Connect the two vehicles according to instructions of the vehicle to be towed.
  - When stationary, the vehicle automatically enters the trailer mode after the cable is connected.

- Light detection
  - Automatic: Light detection automatically starts 15s after the cable is connected.
  - Manual: Tap "Light Detection" in the towing function interface of the touchscreen, and then automatic light detection starts after 15s.

**CAUTION**

- Do not connect/disconnect the trailer or cable before the vehicle stops, or hidden safety problems are caused.

**CAUTION**

- In the trailer mode, the maximum speed limit is 110 km/h.
- In the trailer mode, when the user opens the trunk lid, it unlocks but does not automatically open.
- After the vehicle enters the trailer mode, automatic cruise control, ICC, automatic parking, emergency braking, lane keeping assist, automatic trunk lid

**CAUTION**

opening and some collision warning functions are disabled. Please exercise caution while driving.

**REMINDER**

- Unplug the electric signal plug from the trailer hitch to exit the trailer mode.
- After the vehicle enters the trailer mode, the driving mode is set to Comfort mode by default and cannot be switched.

**Trailer mode indicator**

- The trailer mode indicator is displayed on the dashboard.
- It stays blue when the trailer cable connection is normal.
- It stays red when the trailer cable connection is abnormal.
- It is off when the trailer cable is not connected.

| Function | State | Lighting up | Indicator |
|---|---|---|---|
| Towing | Normal | Staying blue | |
| | Abnormal | Staying red | |

**WARNING**

- Always ensure that all trailer wheels have been securely chocked. Failure to do so can result in serious damage, injury, or death.

**Influence of trailer towing on range**

- Towing a trailer increases vehicle weight and drag. As a result, the driving range can decrease significantly. The trip planning function can adjust the range estimate based on the energy consumption in the historical towing (initial calibration value is adopted in case of first towing), and dynamically adjust it based on the energy consumption during driving.

### Trailer sway mitigation

- When trailer sway is detected, the vehicle ESC applies the appropriate amount of braking to minimize sway.

  The ESP indicator  on the dashboard flashes. Pressing the brake pedal when the system automatically applies braking due to trailer sway does not cancel indicator flashing until the system becomes stable.

## Fuel

### Fuel Selection

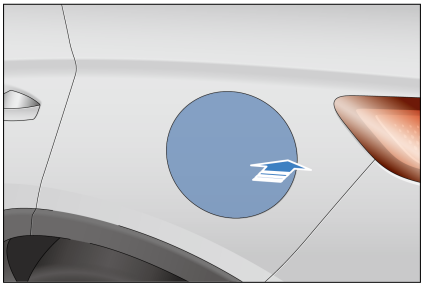
- The use of correct fuel is the basis for realizing the best performance of the engine, and also the key to controlling emissions and protecting relevant components.
- Please use 95# and above unleaded petrol with a required ethanol content of E10 and below.

**CAUTION**

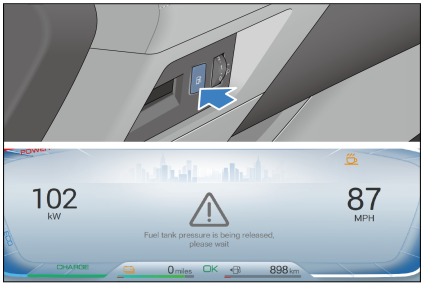
- Do not use leaded petrol. The use of leaded petrol leads to the failure of the three-way catalytic converter and the malfunction of the control device for exhaust pollution, as well as the increase in maintenance costs.
- The engine damage or excessive emission caused by the use of improper fuel is not covered by the warranty.
- The use of low-grade or inferior petrol reduces the service life of the engine.

### Refueling

1. The fuel filler hatch is located on the left side of the vehicle, so park the vehicle with its left side close to the fuel pump.



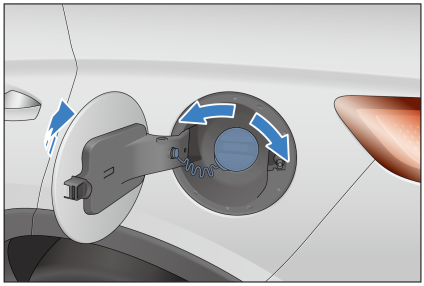
2. Press the refueling button. The instrument shows pressure releasing and reminds that please refuel after 2s. Then press the fuel filler hatch to open it.




3. Open the fuel filler hatch, and rotate the fuel tank cap anticlockwise to remove it. You may hear a "hiss" sound due to the release of pressure in the fuel tank.

- Connect the fuel tank cap to the fuel filler hatch with a tether to prevent inadvertent loss of the cap. While refueling, place the fuel tank cap on the bracket of the fuel filler hatch.

4. After refueling, screw up the fuel tank cap clockwise and then close the fuel filler hatch.



5. If the fuel filler cap has been left open for a long time and you need to refuel, close the fuel filler cap, then press the fuel filler button and follow the step② to refuel.

**REMINDER**

Since the fuel is flammable and combustible, pay attention to the following matters during refueling:

- Turn off the engine and keep it away from heat, sparks and open flames.
- It is recommended to fill fuel outdoors.
- Immediately wipe up spilled fuel.
- Do not smoke during fuel filling, so as to prevent sparks or open flames, which are easy to cause combustion.
- Do not remove the fuel filler cap immediately after it is opened. In hot weather, if the fuel tank cap is suddenly removed, personal injury may be caused by the ejection of fuel under pressure from the filler.
- Stop filling after the filler nozzle is automatically cut off. Do not overfill the fuel tank, so as to leave some space for fuel expansion due to the temperature change.

**REMINDER**

- Check whether the fuel filler cap is tightened and whether the fuel filler hatch is closed in time after refueling.

## How to Save Fuel and Extend Service Life of the Vehicle

- Following easy operations should be taken for extending the service life of the vehicle and saving fuel and repair costs: The followings are some tips for saving fuel and repair costs:
  - Constant speeds save fuel. Sudden acceleration, sharp turning, and emergency braking consume more fuel.
  - Speeds should be kept constant according to traffic conditions. Each deceleration or acceleration of the vehicle consumes additional fuel.
  - Use cruise control under proper driving conditions.
  - The use of the A/C brings additional load to the engine, resulting in large fuel consumption. Turn off the A/C as far as possible. In nice weather, it is recommended to use the fresh air mode for ventilation.
  - Make sure tyre pressure is correct. Insufficient tyre pressure causes tyre wear and fuel waste.
  - Do not load unnecessary weight on the vehicle. Excessive weight brings additional load to the engine, resulting in large fuel consumption.
  - When the engine is in a cold state, do not run at a high speed or drive with the acceleration pedal pressed to a deep position immediately after

starting, so as to prevent damage to the engine.

- Avoid continuous acceleration and deceleration. Frequent stop and start cause fuel waste.
- Avoid unnecessary parking or braking. Maintain a stable speed and observe traffic lights to minimize the number of stops. When driving on the road without traffic lights, keep a proper driving distance from the vehicle ahead to avoid emergency braking, which may also reduce the brake wear.
- Do not drive on roads with heavy traffic or traffic jams as much as possible.
- Do not always put your foot on the brake pedal if unnecessary, because this may cause premature wear, overheating, and consumption of a large amount of fuel.
- Keep moderate speeds in motorways. Higher vehicle speed consumes more fuel. Keep the vehicle speed within the economical range of speed.
- Keep front wheels properly aligned, Avoid collision with curbstones and drive slowly on rough roads. An inaccurate front wheel alignment causes excessive tyre wear and increases the engine load and fuel consumption.
- Keep the chassis clean and free of mud. This reduces vehicle weight and prevents corrosion.
- Adjust the vehicle to keep it at its best. Such conditions as dirty air filters, much carbon deposit in spark plugs, dirty, deteriorated or viscous engine oil and lubricating oil, and unadjusted brakes worsen the engine performance and waste fuel. Regular maintenance must be carried out to ensure a long service life of all components and reduce operating costs. If the vehicle is often driven under severe conditions, the maintenance interval shall be shortened.

**REMINDER**

- Do not coast in neutral gear.

## Carrying Luggage

- This vehicle features several different spaces for convenient storage of articles.
- The glovebox, side glovebox, and seat back file pockets are designed to store small and light items, while the boot is used to store larger and heavier items.
- Too much baggage or improper loading may affect the performance, stability, and normal running of the vehicle and reduce vehicle safety.
- For loading baggage, the total mass of the vehicle body, all passengers, and baggage shall not exceed the maximum allowable mass.
- Therefore, please read the following contents before loading baggage.

**WARNING**

- Overloading and improper loading affect the maneuverability and stability of the vehicle, and may even result in collision accidents.
- Observe the total load limits and other loading guidelines in this Manual.
- Do not carry articles with strong magnetism to avoid interference

**WARNING**

with the normal running of the vehicle.

**Carrying Items in the Passenger Area**

- All items that could be thrown inwards and thus injure occupants in case of a collision must be properly placed and secured.
- Ensure that items placed on the floor behind the front seat do not roll under the seat, so as to avoid affecting the driver's ability to control the pedals or normal seat adjustment. Do not stack items to a height taller than the front seats' seatbacks.
- Make sure the glove box is always closed while driving. If the glove box is open, the occupant's knees may be injured in case of a collision or an emergency stop.

**REMINDER**

- Do not pile up toys in the vehicle, as this may affect driving safety and present a hazard to the children, especially in case of emergency braking or collision.

**Loading Baggage in the Boot**

- Place the baggage evenly in the boot, and put the heaviest baggage at the front bottom as far as possible.
- Secure the articles with ropes or chains to make sure they do not move during driving. Do not stack the articles higher than the seat backrests.
- If the trunk lid cannot be closed due to the carriage of large articles, the vehicle exhaust may enter the passenger area. To avoid carbon monoxide poisoning, please refer to ***P125*** in this Manual.

**Roof Rack**

- When installing the roof rack, please read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.

**CAUTION**

- The roof rack of this vehicle is an exterior trim and is not allowed to carry goods and luggage.

## Risk of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning

- The engine exhaust contains CO gas. If the vehicle is properly maintained, CO may not enter inside during normal driving.
- Check the exhaust system for leakage under the following conditions:
  - The exhaust sound is abnormal.
  - The vehicle has been subjected to accidents that may damage the bottom of the vehicle.

**WARNING**

- CO gas is toxic. Inhalation of CO can result in loss of consciousness and even threat to life. Any enclosed environment and activities that can cause CO poisoning should be avoided.
- High-concentration carbon monoxide gas will quickly concentrate in closed areas, such as garages. Do not start the engine when the garage door is closed. Even if the garage door is open, the running time of the engine should be limited to the extent

**WARNING**

that the vehicle can be driven out of the garage.

- When the trunk lid is opened, airflow will bring the exhaust into the vehicle, creating a dangerous environment. If the vehicle must be started with the trunk lid open, all windows shall be lowered and the interior air control system shall be adjusted according to the following prompts:
  - Select the fresh air mode.
  - Select the "Face level vent and foot level vent" mode.
  - Set the fan speed at "High speed" .

## Wading into Water

- The depth of water must be ascertained to ensure it will not exceed the lower edge of the vehicle body.
- For driving in water, turn off the A/C before starting the vehicle, engage the low gear, and then keep pressing the accelerator pedal gently to drive over the waterlogged road stretch at a steady and slow speed. Do not release the pedal midway, or the exhaust back pressure is generated to suck water into the engine and causes serious damage.



- Do not park the vehicle in water, or reverse the vehicle and turn off the engine in water.
- After driving through the flooded area, press the brake pedal several times continuously and gently to evaporate the water on the brake disc, so as to restore normal braking performance as soon as possible.
- Drive carefully as driving through deep water may wet the brakes.

**WARNING**

- If there is any water or mud on the brake disc, it may result in delayed brake reaction and extended braking distance, so attention should be paid to preventing accidents.
- Avoid emergency braking as much as possible after driving through waterlogged road stretches.
- No water ingress into the engine is allowed! If the vehicle is running on a low-lying and waterlogged road, prevent water ingress into the engine; otherwise, the engine may be seriously damaged. The resulting vehicle fault and damage may not be covered by the warranty.
- After the vehicle is driven through the waterlogged road stretches, the transmission system, driving system, electrical system, and other vehicle components may also be seriously damaged. The resulting vehicle fault and damage may not be covered by the warranty.
- In strong convective weather, try your best to charge the vehicle in sheltered places. If the vehicle is soaked or wades in

**WARNING**

water beyond the door sill, water may ingress into the high-voltage components. In such a case, please contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider in time for proper detection and handling.

- Do not drive on roads with ponding deeper than half of the tire height.

**Impact of water ingress into high-voltage components:**

- High-voltage components are electronic devices. After the vehicle is soaked in water, drying the high-voltage components in the sun or air cannot ensure the full evaporation of water.
- Water ingress may also greatly affect the insulation of high-voltage components; at the same time, the conductive substances contained in water may cause internal short circuits of high-voltage components or high-voltage systems. In this case, the safety and service performance of the vehicle may be seriously affected.
- Water ingress into high-voltage components has a great impact on product protection level and withstand voltage performance, which may lead to a great safety risk.

## Fire Prevention

**To effectively prevent vehicle fires, please take the following precautions:**

- Do not place any flammable or explosive materials in the vehicle.
  - In hot summer, the interior temperature of the vehicle parked in the sun can be more than 70°C. If there are lighters, cleaning agents, perfume, and other flammable and explosive materials in the vehicle, it is easy to cause fires and even explosions.
- Make sure the cigarette butt is completely extinguished after smoking.
  - Smoking is not only harmful to health, but also may cause a fire. Cigarettes that not thoroughly put out may cause a fire.
- Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for regular inspection.
  - Check vehicle wiring, connections, wiring harnesses, insulation, fixed positions regularly. Deal with identified problems promptly.
- Do not modify the vehicle's wiring or install any additional electrical appliances.
  - Installing other electrical appliances (such as high-power audio systems and lights) causes excessive wiring load, resulting in heating of the wiring harness and fires. Improper modification of electrical appliances and wirings causes abnormal heating and fires due to contact resistance.
  - Do not replace fuses with those beyond the rated specification of electrical appliances or with other metal wires.
- Park the vehicle in a proper place.
  - During parking, especially in summer, be sure to check whether there are flammables under the vehicle, such as hay, dead branches, leaves, or wheat straws. It is likely to cause a fire in case of the existence of flammables under the vehicle.
  - During driving, avoid roads with flammables such as dry leaves, wheat straws and weeds as far as

possible, or pull over the vehicle in time to check whether there are flammables under the vehicle after passing through such roads. Do not park the vehicle in a place exposed to the sun.

- Always keep portable fire extinguishers on the vehicle and know how to use.
  - Carry fire extinguishers with the vehicle and regularly check and replace them to ensure safety. Be familiar with the use of fire extinguishers, so as to make rapid response to accidents.
- Always disconnect the negative terminal of the low-voltage battery during vehicle repair or maintenance.
- In case of a fire in the vehicle, take effective measures in a timely and calm manner to minimize losses.
  - Generally, there are early signs of a fire, such as abnormal noise and odor in the vehicle body. If any, pull over the vehicle immediately and actively put out the fire according to the actual situation.
  - Find out the origin of the fire. In case of any smoke in the front compartment, do not open the hood immediately (because this aggravates the combustion and spread of the fire due to air ingress. There are limited combustibles in the front compartment, so the hood shall be kept closed to control the flames, which is conducive to firefighting).
  - Dial (fire emergency number) to notify the authorities and insurance company.
  - After the fire brigade put out the fire, ask them for a rescue certificate and statement of fire cause.
- After the accident, contact the insurance company in time for post-accident handling.

**REMINDER**

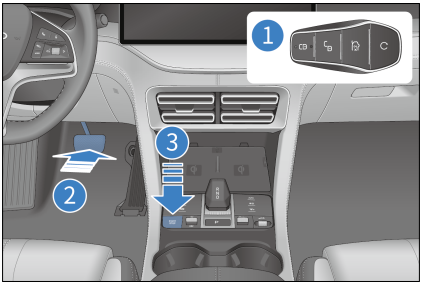
- In order to mitigate losses in the event of an accident, the purchase of commercial insurance (fire loss, theft, etc.) is recommended.

# Starting and Driving

## Starting the Vehicle

**Correct method for starting the vehicle**

- Engage the parking brake firmly.
- Turn off all unnecessary lights and accessories.
- Place the gearshift lever in the P or N position.
- Carry the smart key ①.
- Press the brake pedal ② and START/STOP button ③.




- When the indicator OK on the instrument cluster lights up, it indicates that the vehicle is ready for driving.

**Failure to start the vehicle:**

- The vehicle cannot be started safely under the following circumstances:

- When pressing the Start/Stop button, if the smart key system indicator lights up, the vehicle horn makes a sound, and the information display screen of the instrument cluster displays "No key detected", it indicates that the electronic smart key is not in the vehicle or cannot be detected due to interference.
- Even if the electronic smart key is inside the vehicle, the vehicle may not be started either when the key is on the floor, in the cup holder, in the boot, or in the right glovebox.

- When the electronic smart key stands for more than 1min, the vehicle may not be started.

**Starting the vehicle in emergencies:**

- Engage the parking brake firmly.
- Turn off all unnecessary lights and accessories.
- Place the gearshift lever in the P or N position.
- Ensure the vehicle is powered off.
- The electronic smart key is in the vehicle.
- Press and hold the START/STOP button for more than 15 seconds to start the vehicle.

**REMINDER**

- Do not touch the power button while driving.

## Driving

- During the driving, energy is recovered through regenerative brakes when the vehicle decelerates. For higher efficiency, do not accelerate or decelerate the vehicle unnecessarily.
- Users can go to the relevant setting page via the touchscreen to select the corresponding energy feedback mode according to their driving habits.
  - Standard: When the accelerator pedal is released, the motor controller recovers energy in the standard level, and the vehicle deceleration is in the standard level.
  - High: When the accelerator pedal is released, the motor controller recovers more energy, and the vehicle deceleration is high.
- Users can choose the energy feedback intensity according to their needs when releasing the accelerator to experience different senses of deceleration, and obtain different driving pleasures.
- The set accelerator release energy feedback intensity can be memorized. Even after the vehicle is powered off, the mode set last time remains valid when the vehicle is powered on next time.

**REMINDER**

- Do not set the regeneration intensity when driving the vehicle in high speed, as the driver may be distracted. This may distract the driver and lead to accidents.

- In HEV mode, the engine automatically starts and stops as needed to charge the battery or provide additional power. In some conditions, the engine may start, or stop if it has started.
- The power of the whole vehicle is weaker at low battery level than that at high battery level.

**Kick-Down function**

During driving, when the vehicle is going uphill or it is necessary to accelerate

rapidly or press the accelerator deeply, almost fully pressing the accelerator increases the pedal resistance and triggers this function, so that the engine speed increases to provide greater power for the vehicle.

**CAUTION**

- Higher battery SOC can ensure sufficient discharge power of the power battery, so that the engine can work normally and a better acceleration experience can be obtained.
- Battery fault, generator fault, and engine fault may affect the Kick-Down power output.
- Frequent triggering of the Kick-Down function will cause the battery level of the vehicle to drop rapidly.

**Safety Check Before Driving**

**Exterior**

- Tyres: Check tyre pressure and carefully inspect tyres for any cut, damage, foreign material, anomaly, and excessive wear. In case of excessive wear or eccentric wear, drive the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for four-wheel alignment and relevant inspection as soon as possible.
- Lug nuts: Ensure all nuts are fitted and tightened.
- Leaks: check underneath the vehicle for leakage of fuel, oil, coolant or other liquids (except water droplets from A/C condensation) after the vehicle stops for a while.
- Lighting: Make sure headlights, position lights, turn signals and all other lights are working normally. Check headlight intensity.

**Interior**

- Seat belt: check whether the buckle can be fastened. Confirm that the seat belt is not worn or scratched.
- Instrument cluster: Particularly, verify that maintenance indicator, instrument cluster lighting, and defroster work properly.
- Braking: Verify that there is enough space for the brake pedal to work.

**In the engine compartment**

- Spare fuses: Verify that spare fuses of all rated charges in the fuse box are available.
- Coolant level: Verify that coolant level is correct.
- Brake fluid level: Verify that the brake fluid level is correct.
- Low-voltage Battery and cable: check the connector for corrosion or looseness, and check the shell of the battery for cracks.
- Fuel pipe: check the pipe for any fuel leakage and loose connections.

**Check after starting**

- Instrument cluster: Confirm that the maintenance indicator and the speedometer work normally.
- Brakes: In a safe area, verify that the vehicle maintains a straight direction.
- Other abnormalities: check for loose parts, leakage and abnormal noise.

**Preparations Before Driving**

- Check your surroundings before getting into vehicle.
- Adjust seat position, seatback angle, cushion height, headrest height, and the steering wheel angle and height.

- Adjust interior rearview mirror and side mirrors.
- Make sure all doors are closed.
- Fasten the seat belts.

## Remote Start*

**Before Remote Driving**

1 . Check the surroundings of the vehicle.

2 . Make sure that the steering wheel rotates smoothly.

3. Ensure that the powertrain is normal and no fault indicators light up on the instrument cluster.

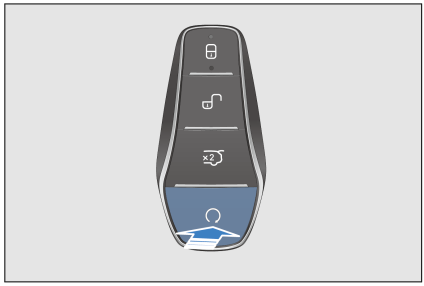
4. All occupants get off the vehicle.

**Protection Mode**

When the instrument cluster or infotainment prompts "For your safety, remote driving is temporarily disabled", it may indicate that the road condition is not suitable for remote driving, or the system is overheated and switches to the protection mode. Then, stop operating the remote driving.

**Remote Starting**

- Press and hold the start/stop button on the smart key to start the vehicle. After the vehicle is started successfully, the turn signals flash 3 times.
- After the successful start, press and hold the start/stop button on the intelligent key to shut down the engine and power off the vehicle, and the turn signals flash twice.



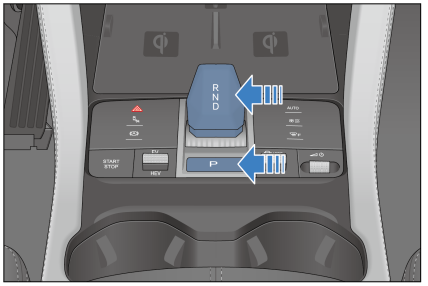
**CAUTION**

- The use of remote driving must comply with the road traffic regulations of your country.
- Before use, it must be ensured that the powertrain is free of faults and no device hinders the rotation of the steering wheel.
- Make sure that there are no pedestrians or obstacles around the vehicle during use. Do not use remote driving when there are pedestrians around or the road conditions are complicated.
- Minors and people without driving licenses are not allowed to use remote driving.
- Do not use remote driving on roads with slopes, accumulated snow, puddles, or potholes.
- Do not operate the remote driving in the vehicle.
- Failure to follow the requirements of this manual may invalidate the insurance liability of the insurance company.
- Do not use remote driving after drinking.

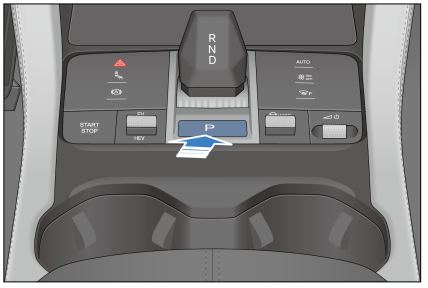
## Gearshift control panel

Gear positions are marked on the gearshift panel, as indicated by the figure.

- "R": Reverse, used only when the vehicle has come to a complete stop.
- "N": Neutral. Use it for temporary parking or towing. However, the driver must ensure that the transmission is shifted to P before leaving the vehicle.
- "D": Drive. Use it for normal driving.




- "P": Park. Press the P gear button to park the vehicle. The transmission should be set to this position when the vehicle is being shut down or started up. By pressing the brake pedal to start the vehicle, you can shift from Park to another position.
- After successful gear shifting, release the gearshift lever, and it automatically returns to the central position.




The transmission can be shifted to D/R only when the ignition is on.

Press the brake pedal to shift out of P or to D/R.

**CAUTION**

- To ensure safety, depress the brake pedal before shifting out of P gear and shifting into R gear.
- To avoid damaging the transmission, press the P gear button only after the vehicle has come to a complete stop.

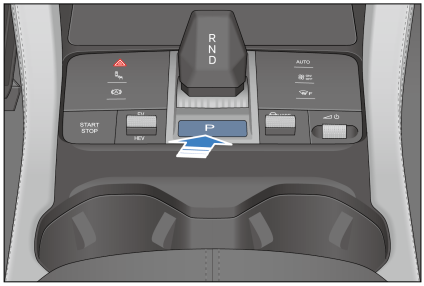
**WARNING**

- If the engine or motor is shut down, do not move the vehicle after shifting to the N position to avoid accidents due to insufficient braking force.
- If the engine/motor is running and the vehicle is in R/D, be sure to press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle. Because even under idle conditions, the transmission can still transmit power, and the vehicle may move forward slowly.
- If you want to shift a gear while driving forward, do not step on the accelerator pedal to prevent accidents.
- Never shift to "R" or press the "P" button while the vehicle is moving, in order to prevent accidents.
- Do not drive the vehicle down a slope when it is in the "N" gear, even if the engine or motor is not running.
- To prevent inadvertent vehicle movement, apply the parking brake when the vehicle comes to a full stop and press the "P" button.

# Electric Parking Brake (EPB)

### EPB Switch

Make sure that the Electronic Parking Brake(EPB )is engaged when parking and leaving the vehicle.




### Engaging EPB Manually

When the vehicle is not in P and EPB is released, press the brake pedal and engage EPB from the touchscreen. EPB applies appropriate parking force, and Ⓟ flashes and then stays on with a text prompt displaying "EPB engaged".

**CAUTION**

- The Ⓟ flashing indicates the EPB is working. If the vehicle is on a slope, do not release the brake pedal to avoid sliding. Release the brake pedal after the indicator Ⓟ stays on.

### Engaging EPB Automatically

- **Engaging EPB automatically when the ignition is switched off**
  - Switching the power from ON to OFF engages the EPB automatically. The indicator Ⓟ on the instrument cluster lights up.
- **Shifting into "P" automatically**
  - Press and hold the brake pedal to stop the vehicle, and shift to P to automatically engage EPB. Do not release the brake pedal until the corresponding indicator on the instrument cluster stops flashing and stays on with a text prompt displaying "EPB engaged".

**CAUTION**

- Do not release the brake pedal early in the process, especially when the vehicle is stopped on a slope; otherwise the vehicle may slip back.
- This function is designed to improve the vehicle safety. Excessive reliance on or frequent use of the function is not recommended. To ensure safety, make sure that the transmission is shifted to P or the EPB is engaged before leaving the vehicle.

### Automatic EPB Release upon Vehicle Start

- When the vehicle is parked, start the vehicle, press and hold the brake pedal, and shift to D or R from P or N to automatically release EPB. The indicator goes out, and a text prompt reading "EPB released" is displayed.

**CAUTION**

- Be sure to always press and hold the brake pedal when shifting gears. Release the pedal only after the intended gear is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- The EPB system conducts power-up self-check within several seconds after the vehicle is

**CAUTION**

started. In this process, the system does not respond to any function.

- When the vehicle is in D or R after start and EPB is engaged from the touchscreen, slowly press the accelerator pedal to a certain extent to automatically release EPB. The indicator goes out, and a text prompt reading "EPB released" is displayed.

**If EPB Release Fails**

- Release the EPB via PAD→Vehicle Health→Overhaul→EPB trailer mode when P switch fails.
  - If the EPB can be released, drive the vehicle to the nearest BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance as soon as possible.
  - If it still cannot be released, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

**Emergency braking function**

- During driving, if the brake is blocked or fails and the ESC system operates normally, the Controller Deceleration Parking(CDP)can be used for emergency braking.
  - Press the P button to forcibly brake the vehicle, and press the brake pedal at the same time to achieve greater deceleration.
  - To stop braking as needed, just release the P gear switch.
  - After the vehicle stops, the EPB remains activated. To start the vehicle again, repeat the operation to release the EPB.
- Forced braking with EPB shall be avoided as far as possible. Emergency braking may cause vehicle drifting, sideslip or lane departure, resulting in accidents when the vehicle passes through curves, dangerous sections, traffic congestion and other sections or when the vehicle is running in severe weather conditions.

**EPB System Indicator**

- When the vehicle is powered on, if the EPB is engaged, the indicator (P) on the instrument cluster stays on.
- When the vehicle is powered off, if the EPB is engaged, the indicator (P) on the instrument cluster lights up for a few seconds and then goes out.
- When the vehicle is powered on, the EPB system performs self-inspection. The indicator (!) on the instrument cluster lights up for a few seconds and then goes out. If it does not go out, it indicates that the EPB system may be faulty. In this case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider immediately.

**EPB Operating Sound**

- When the EPB is engaged or released, the driver may hear the sound of the EPB motor running.
- After the emergency braking function is activated, if burning smell or abnormal noise appears, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

**WARNING**

- In order to prevent the vehicle from sliding, the gear must be shifted to "P" gear before leaving the vehicle.

**WARNING**

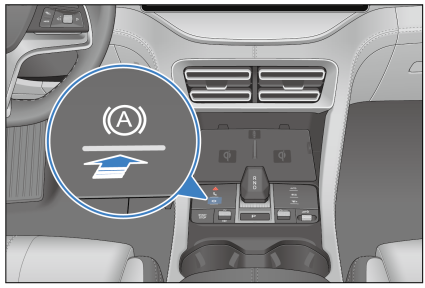
- When the vehicle is running, passengers are prohibited from operating the P gear switch to avoid serious accidents.
- When the EPB is being pulled up or released, press the brake pedal as much as possible to prevent the vehicle from sliding and causing gear jamming when the EPB cannot provide sufficient parking force.
- Avoid using the EPB system to stop the vehicle. The emergency braking function can only be activated in case of emergency situations such as pedal brake failure or brake pedal blocked.
- Because EPB cannot exceed the physical limit of road adhesion, using the emergency braking function when passing through curves, dangerous roads, and traffic congestion sections, or driving in severe weather conditions may cause the vehicle to drift, slip or deviate, so attention should be paid to avoid accidents.

## Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)

### AVH Switch

Auto Vehicle Hold(AVH)is used when it is necessary to stop the vehicle and wait for a long time, such as encountering a traffic jam on a slope or waiting at a traffic light. The AVH function is automatically triggered when the brake pedal is pressed to stop the vehicle (vehicle speed decreases to zero) on the premise that the vehicle meets the conditions for AVH standby status.

Press the AVH button to turn AVH on.



**CAUTION**

- To deactivate AVH and set it to the standby mode, press the accelerator pedal or shift to P. This works even if the conditions for AVH standby state are not met.

**Preconditions for AVH Standby Status (to be met simultaneously)**

With the AVH function activated:

- The driver seat belt is fastened.
- The driver's door is closed.
- The vehicle is started.
- The ESC system has no fault.

**CAUTION**

- The power-on AVH function is off by default. When it is on standby, the white Ⓐ indicator on the instrument cluster stays on.

**Conditions for AVH function**

- The AVH function is standby.
- The vehicle is stopped by the control of the brake pedal.

- After hard depressing of the brake pedal, the AVH function has been activated and the AVH indicator has turned green.
- After the AVH function operates for 10 min, it automatically requests to engage the EPB and the AVH returns to the standby condition.

**CAUTION**

- For AVH to be activated, all conditions of automatic parking function must be met.
- Under the condition of AVH activation and standy, when the gear is shifted to “R”, the system automatically enters the slow-moving condition; when the gear is shifted from "R" to "D" or "N", the system maintains the slow-moving condition, in which AVH is deactivated. When the AVH button is pressed or the speed exceeds 10 km/h, it exits the slow-moving condition.

## Driving Precautions

**Driving Instructions**

- Slow down when driving against strong winds.
- Drive slowly and carefully along gravel roads and try to keep the correct angle. To prevent tyre damage, do not drive over sharp-edged obstacles. Or it will severely damage the tyres.
- Slow down on bumpy or uneven roads. Otherwise, the impact may seriously damage the wheel.
- Washing the vehicle or driving through deep water may wet the brake. Gently press the brake pedal for check after confirming that the surrounding environment is safe. If the braking force is not normal, the brake may be wet. Drive carefully and press the brake pedal gently while pulling up the EPB button.
- During driving, if the "START/STOP" button is pressed for more than 3s, the power output of the vehicle is cut off to realize emergency power-off. At this time, it is recommended to press the hazard warning light button, slide along the roadside, and gradually slow down until the vehicle stops by trying to press the brake pedal, engaging the EPB or hit surrounding obstacles at a low speed, etc.

**CAUTION**

- Before driving, make sure that EPB is fully released and the EPB indicator is off.
- Do not leave the vehicle when the engine is running.
- Do not put foot on the brake pedal when driving. It may cause dangerous heating, wearing, and wasting of fuel.
- Slow down when driving down steep slopes, and avoid braking too frequently to prevent disc overheating, which affects brake performance.
- Be careful when accelerating or braking on slippery roads. Quick acceleration or sudden braking will cause the vehicle to skid or deviate.
- Make sure no occupant sticks their head or hands outside the vehicle, specially when it comes to children.
- Avoid driving through flooded areas as much as possible.

**CAUTION**

- A large amount of water entering the hood may cause damage to the engine power system and electrical components.

**WARNING**

- The driver shall ensure the riding safety of all passengers in the vehicle, guide them to correctly use vehicle features, and prevent children and other passengers from operating control switches such as window switches in a wrong way.

**Winter Driving Precautions**

- Confirm that the antifreeze has the correct anti-freezing effect.
  - Use the type of antifreeze compatible with the original vehicle model and suitable for the ambient temperature to fill into the cooling system.
  - Improper antifreeze may damage the cooling system.
- Check the low-voltage battery and cable conditions.
  - Cold weather may reduce the energy of the low-voltage battery. Therefore, the low-voltage battery shall be kept with sufficient power for winter startup.
- Confirm that the viscosity of the oil is suitable for winter driving.
- Avoid the door lock frozen by ice and snow.
  - Spray some deicing agent or glycerin into the door lock hole to prevent icing.
- Use washer fluid containing antifreeze.
  - Such products are available in BYD authorized dealers or service providers and all auto parts stores.
  - The mixing ratio of water and antifreeze shall comply with the manufacturer's instructions.

**CAUTION**

- Do not use antifreeze or other substitutes as washer fluid, which may damage the vehicle paint.

- Avoid accumulation of ice and snow under the mudguard.
  - The accumulation of ice and snow under the mudguard may make steering difficult. When driving in cold winter, pull over the vehicle often to check whether there is ice and snow accumulated under the mudguard.
- It is recommended to carry several necessary emergency tools or items according to different road conditions.
  - It is advisable to have snow chains, window scraper, bags of sand and salt, flashing signal, a shovel and connecting cables in the vehicle.

**Engine Cylinder Cleaning**

In severe cold areas, failure to start the engine may cause engine cylinder flooding, so it is necessary to carry out cylinder cleaning:

1. When the OK indicator stays on, the vehicle is in MAX-EV mode, and the engine is at a standstill, then manually switch to the N gear.
2. Pull up the EPB switch manually, step on the brake and accelerator pedal to the bottom at the same time, and wait for a few seconds to enter the cylinder cleaning function.

# Driver Assistance

## Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

- Based on conventional cruise control, the adaptive cruise control (ACC) system is designed to actively control the vehicle’ s speed for auto follow-up while cruising. This is done via a front mmWave radar and a multi-purpose camera which detect the vehicle's distance and speed relative to the vehicle ahead. The system switches between regular cruise control and ACC according to whether there is a vehicle ahead.
- Cruise speed and time interval from the vehicle ahead can be set by using the cruise buttons. You can set the cruise control speed within a 20-95mph (30-150 km/h) range, or set a fixed distance from the vehicle ahead to cruise at speeds between 0 (0 km/h) and 95mph (150 km/h).

### Status Description

- ACC standby:
  - After the system is turned on, it is in standby mode by default and can be activated through the driver's active operation. However, it is also possible that the vehicle does not meet the conditions for activation. In this case, the driver should actively check the vehicle to make it meet the activation conditions.  is then displayed on the instrument cluster (cruise speed is variable).
- ACC activated:
  - The system is in a normal working state. The vehicle can run at a fixed speed or automatically adjust the distance from the target vehicle ahead for stable following.  is then displayed on the instrument cluster (cruise speed is variable).
- State of cruise control acceleration:
  - When ACC is activated, the driver can press the accelerator pedal to accelerate, and ACC stops working until the driver releases the pedal.
- ACC failure:
  - ACC fails and cannot respond any operations. The ACC fault state indicator  on the instrument cluster lights up. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

### ACC Activation Conditions

- The EPB has been released.
- The vehicle is in D gear.
- The vehicle does not slide backwards.
- The trunk, hood, and all doors are closed.
- Driver seat belt is fastened.
- The ESC system is on, but not activated yet.
- The vehicle speed is below 150 km/h (95 mph).
- The brake pedal is pressed when the vehicle speed is 0, or the brake pedal is not pressed when the vehicle speed is above 0.
- No vehicle network communication fault prompt is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- The AEB function is not activated.

### How to Use

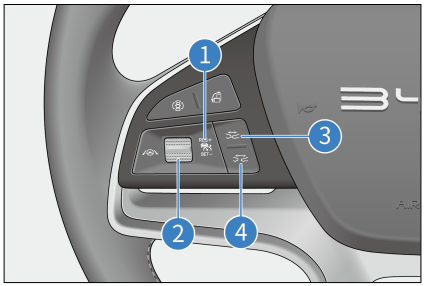
**ACC buttons**

① Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

② Multifunctional lever (pull up to increase or restore the cruise speed; pull down to decrease or set the cruise speed)

③ Reducing the following distance

④ Increasing the following distance




**ACC activation/deactivation**

- Press button① to activate or exit ACC (when activation conditions are satisfied, ACC is activated). (When activated, ACC sets the current vehicle speed as the cruise speed by default. When the current speed is less than 30 km/h, the cruise speed is set to 30 km/h.)

**Resetting ACC**

- When the ACC system is on standby within the same ignition cycle, the system memorises the last speed setting. Push up the lever② to restore to the stored speed prior to exiting the cruise system.

**Increasing/Decreasing target speed**

- When ACC is activated, toggle the lever② to set the cruise speed between 30 km/h and 150 km/h (20 mph and 95 mph). Toggling the lever② up or down increases or decreases target speed by 5 km/h (5mph).

**Exiting ACC**

- During ACC activation, press the button① again or the brake pedal to deactivate ACC and set it to the standby mode.

**Setting vehicle distance**

- The driver must select a safe vehicle distance.
- The system adjusts vehicle speed to keep a suitable distance from the vehicle ahead on the same lane. The following distance (four levels), in direct proportion to the vehicle speed, is adjustable by buttons ③ and ④ on the steering wheel. The higher the vehicle speed, the greater the following distance.

**Active Acceleration/Deceleration While ACC Is Activated**

- When ACC is activated, you can press the accelerator pedal to reach the set target cruise speed in advance. The system then enters over speed mode. When the vehicle is already traveling at the target cruise speed and the accelerator pedal is pressed and does not perform other operations, the vehicle returns to the target speed set before acceleration; if the brake pedal is pressed, ACC automatically enters standby status, and needs to be re-activated after the brake pedal is released.

**Follow-to-stop/start**

- Controlled by ACC, the vehicle can stop when the vehicle ahead stops in normal driving conditions and resume driving automatically following the vehicle ahead if the stop is less than 30 seconds.
- If the stop time is between 30 seconds and 3 minutes, the driver needs to either press the accelerator pedal or pull up the lever ② to activate ACC.

**System limitations**

- The front mmWave radar and multi-purpose camera are positioned in the front area of the vehicle. If their fields of view are obstructed, certain functions may not operate as intended due to interference. If any of these sensors is blocked or covered, ACC directly deactivates and informs of this on the instrument cluster. System function will recover after blockage is removed and the vehicle is restarted or runs on normal roads for a while.
- Front mmWave radar sensors may have a transient function failure from limited detection if the vehicle runs under special conditions, such as circular ramps or tunnels, for an extended period. The function can be recovered by restarting the vehicle or driving on normal roads for a while.
- Reaching or leaving a curve may delay or disturb target selection. In such cases, the ACC vehicle may not brake as expected or may brake late.
- On roads with sharp curves, such as winding roads, the vehicle ahead may be out of ACC sensor detection for several seconds due to sensor vision limitations, possibly causing the ACC vehicle to accelerate automatically.
- Traffic flow and weather conditions, such as rain and fog, must be heeded for setting vehicle distance on the ACC system. After ACC is properly set, the driver should make sure that the vehicle can be decelerated to a complete stop at any time.
- The ACC system may not be able to identify stationary or slow-moving objects, such as vehicles, the end of traffic, toll booths, bicycles, or pedestrians. This means a risk of collision and requires the driver to beware of the surroundings.
- The ACC system cannot identify pedestrians or oncoming vehicles.
- The ACC system can only achieve limited braking instead of emergency braking.
- Metal objects, such as rail or metal plates used in road construction, may interfere with front mmWave radars, making it malfunction.
- The front mmWave radar and multi-purpose camera may be affected by vibrations or collisions, resulting in compromised ACC performance. In this case, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

**Precautions**

- ACC is a comfort system rather than a safety system, obstacle detector or collision warning system. The driver must keep control of vehicle at all times and be fully responsible for the vehicle.
- ACC assists instead of replacing the role of the driver. The driver is responsible for abiding by traffic rules and keeping vehicle control.
- For safety, ACC cannot be activated when ESC is not turned on.
- The ACC is suitable for motorways and roads in good conditions, rather than complex urban or meandering roads.
- It is the driver's responsibility to keep distance from the vehicle ahead. The ACC system's vehicle distance meets the minimum distance required in driving environments in the country.
- Vehicle control is transferred to the driver if the accelerator or brake pedal is pressed with ACC active. As a result, the ACC system cannot keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.

- ACC may have no or slow responses to a vehicle ahead that brakes or stops suddenly, resulting in a risk of late braking. In such cases, there will be no take-over request.
- In some cases, such as when the vehicle ahead is going too slow, when lane change is too fast, or when the safe distance from the vehicle ahead is too short, there is no adequate time for the system to decrease the relative speed, In this case, the driver must response. The system cannot give audible or visual warnings in every case.
- When enabled, ACC may apply braking if a vehicle in an adjacent lane is too close to the vehicle.
- Vehicles coming into the ACC vehicle's lane and within the detection range of its front mmWave radars are identified as target vehicles and prompt a response accordingly, which may lead to hard or late braking.
- Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (a bicycle, four-wheeler, or pedestrian, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance, resulting in either late or no response to those vehicles. In such cases, vehicle speed must be controlled by the driver. In addition, detection may also be affected or delayed by noise or electromagnetic interference.
- ACC cannot target vehicles with too small contact ratio, so the driver must keep control of the vehicle.
- When the vehicle stops as it follows a vehicle ahead, in rare cases, the system does not recognise the end of the vehicle ahead but the lower end of the target (for example, the rear axle of a truck with a high chassis or a vehicle bumper). In such cases, the system cannot ensure proper stop distance, so the driver must stay alert and be ready to brake.
- If ACC is activated with the vehicle stationary, the system identifies any stationary obstacle ahead and keeps the vehicle still to ensure a safe startup and prevent collision. However, this function cannot identify all the obstacles, so the driver must be alert to the front obstacles or other traffic participants.
- Changing the vehicle structure, such as lowering the chassis or changing the front licence mounting plate, may affect the ACC system.
- Do not use the ACC system when driving on roads with poor visibility, ramps, and multiple curves, or slippery and wet roads with snow, ice, and water gathered.
- ACC cannot be activated when the vehicle is in any special driving mode (Trailer/Snow/Mud/Sand/Mountain mode).
- Make sure to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration and checking of front mmWave radars or the multifunctional video controller in any of the following situations:
  - The front mmWave radar, front bumper, front windscreen or multi-purpose camera has been removed.
  - Wheel alignment has been carried out.
  - The vehicle has experienced a collision.
  - It is found that ACC system performance declines or a system error notification is displayed on the cluster.

**WARNING**

- ACC serves as a driver assistance function only, so the driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause ACC to fail.
- Use ACC based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

## Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC)

- The intelligent cruise control (ICC) system integrates ACC and LCC. It can assist the driver with longitudinal and lateral control at a speed between 0 km/h and 120 km/h. It relieves driver burden and ensures safety and comfort.
- When the function is enabled, the driver must always hold the steering wheel and control the vehicle when necessary.
- ACC maintains the vehicle at a constant speed or at a fixed distance to the vehicle ahead through longitudinal control.

### Status Description

- ICC standby:
  - The ICC system is on standby by default and can be manually activated. If the vehicle does not meet activation conditions, the vehicle must be checked until such conditions are met. Then, the icon is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- ICC activated:
  - The ICC system is operational. It maintains the set speed or automatically adjusts the distance from the vehicle ahead. Then, the icon is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- ICC fault state:
  - There has been a failure in the system. No operation can be performed, and the ICC fault indicator lights up on the instrument cluster.

### ICC Activation Conditions

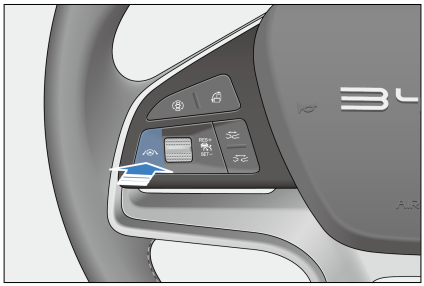
- The EPB has been released.
- The vehicle is in D gear.
- The vehicle does not slide backwards.
- The trunk, hood, and all doors are closed.
- Driver seat belt is fastened.
- ESC system is turned on but not activated.
- Vehicle speed is not greater than 120 km/h.
- Brake pedal is pressed at speed 0; or brake pedal is not pressed at speeds above 0.
- There is no vehicle network communication failure prompt on the instrument cluster.
- The AEB function is not activated.
- Two-way lane lines are clear and the vehicle is at the centre of the lane.

### How to Use

- Use the button on the steering wheel to activate or deactivate ICC. (When activated, ICC sets the current vehicle speed as the cruise speed by default. When the current speed is less than

30 km/h, the cruise speed is set to 30 km/h.)

- Refer to the use of ACC (see the previous chapter for details) for setting the cruise speed and following distance.



- You can also turn ICC on or off in → ADAS → Intelligent Driving. (If already enabled on the infotainment touchscreen, ICC can be turned off only when the vehicle is in Park.) When the vehicle is started, this switch defaults to the state before the last power-off.

**Precautions**

- As ICC integrates ACC and LCC, follow precautions for ACC while using ICC (see the previous chapter for details).
- When ICC is turned on and activated at vehicle speeds between 0 km/h and 120 km/h:
  - If no lane lines are detected ahead, ICC suppresses its transverse control feature and only engages ACC. The ICC working status indicator on the instrument cluster turns gray.
  - If lane lines ahead are clear and recognizable, transverse ICC control is activated automatically. In that case, ICC working status indicator shows activated status on the instrument cluster.
- ICC is designed to assist drivers, not replace them. Drivers must therefore always maintain control of the vehicle and never remove their hands from the steering wheel for extended periods of time. Otherwise, the system is deactivated after prompting the driver to take control of the vehicle.
- ICC is affected by the weather, lighting and clarity of lane lines. Performance degrades significantly in situations such as backlighting, sunsets, snow-covered roads, and severely damaged roads.
- Do not use the ICC system on winding roads with sharp turns, icy and slippery bends, or under weather conditions, such as dense fog, heavy rain and heavy snow, liable to hinder the sensing operation of front mmWave radars or the multifunctional video controller.
- ICC cannot be activated when the vehicle is in any special driving mode* (Trailer/Snow/Mud/Sand/Mountain mode).
- Situations where ICC cannot be used:
  - The sensor is blocked.
  - The vehicle is running under severe weather conditions.
  - Active safety function has been triggered.
  - Vehicle speed exceeds the specified range.
  - A sharp or continuous turn.

**WARNING**

- ICC is only for driver assistance. The driver is fully responsible for maintaining driving safety.

**WARNING**

- ICC may fail due to factors such as unfavorable weather and road conditions.
- Use ICC based on your needs along with traffic and road conditions.

## Predictive Collision Warning (PCW) & Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB)

The predictive emergency braking (PEB) system consists of Pedestrian Collision Warning (PCW)and Automatic Emergency Braking(AEB )systems. PCW and AEB use the front mmWave radar and multi-purpose camera to detect vehicles and pedestrians ahead. Once a collision risk is detected, the system emits audible and visual alarms to urge the driver to take avoidance measures, while also increasing the potential braking pressure to provide sufficient reaction time for the driver. If detecting increased risk of collision, the system automatically applies braking pressure to assist in collision avoidance or impact reduction.

### How to Use

- To enable or disable PCW and AEB, go to → ADAS → Active Safety from the touchscreen.
- PCW has three alarm modes: audible alarm, text alarm and cadence braking alarm.
- When PCW is activated, the instrument cluster displays or depending on the severity of the situation, as well as a text prompt.
- When AEB is triggered, and a prompt message are displayed on the instrument cluster.
- In the event of malfunction, is displayed.
- If you disable AEB manually by pressing buttons, is displayed.

### PCW Activation Conditions

All the following conditions should be met to activate PCW:

- This function has been turned on in Vehicle Settings.
- Vehicle speed is within the 16 km/h-150 km/h range.
- The vehicle is in Drive.
- The vehicle does not slide backwards.

### AEB Activation Conditions

All the following conditions should be met to activate AEB:

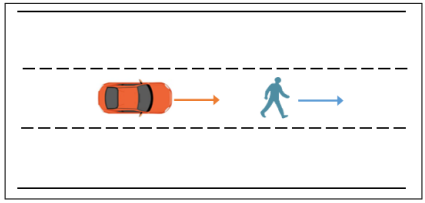
- This function has been turned on in Vehicle Settings.
- Vehicle speed is within the 4km/h-150km/h range.
- EPB is released.
- The vehicle is in D gear.
- The vehicle does not slide backwards.
- The trunk, hood, and all doors are closed.
- Driver seat belt is fastened.
- The ESC system is on, but not activated yet.

### Function instructions

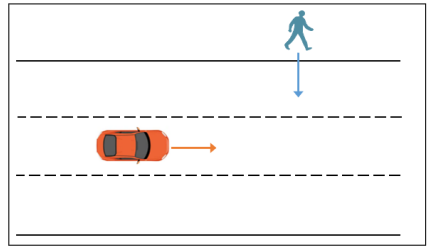
AEB may be activated in the following senarios, whether or not it can be activated depends on a variety of factors such as the self vehicle, the target vehicle

and the environment, we have not listed all the AEB scenarios.

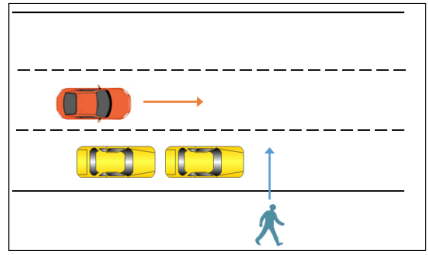
- For pedestrian scenarios
- When the vehicle detects pedestrians moving in the direction of the vehicle ahead, the AEB system will determine whether there is collision risk in real time. If there is a risk of collsion, the system will provide alarm and apply emergency braking to avoid or mitigate collision hazards.
- Limitations of AEB system: Due to the fact that the activation of the system is dependent on the environment, its own state and the state of the target, there is no guarantee that the system can active the emergency brake every time in this scenario.



- WWhen the vehicle detects pedestrians passing horizontally ahead, the AEB system will determine whether there is collision risk in real time. If there is a risk of collsion, the system will provide alarm and apply emergency braking to avoid or mitigate collision hazards.
- Limitations of AEB system: Due to the fact that the activation of the system is dependent on the environment, its own state and the state of the target, there is no guarantee that the system can active the emergency brake every time in this scenario.

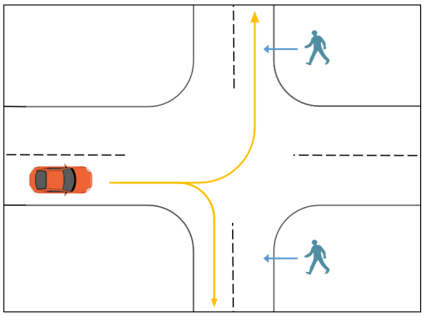


- In the case of visual field occlusion in front of the vehicle, AEB system will detect possible sideways pedestrians and determine whether there is collision risk in real time. If there is a risk of collsion, the system will provide alarm and apply emergency braking to avoid or mitigate collision hazards.
- Limitations of AEB system: Due to the fact that the activation of the system is dependent on the environment, its own state and the state of the target, there is no guarantee that the system can active the emergency brake every time in this scenario.

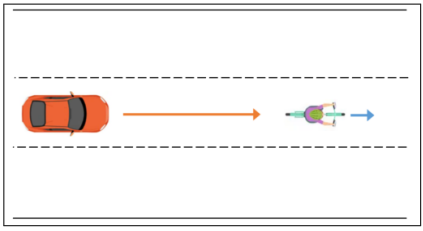


- When the vehicle turns and the system detects pedestrians crossing horizontally, the AEB system will determine whether there is collision risk in real time. If there is a risk of collsion, the system will provide alarm and apply emergency braking to avoid or mitigate collision hazards.
- Limitations of AEB system: Due to the fact that the activation of the system is dependent on the environment, its own state and the state of the target, there is no guarantee that the system

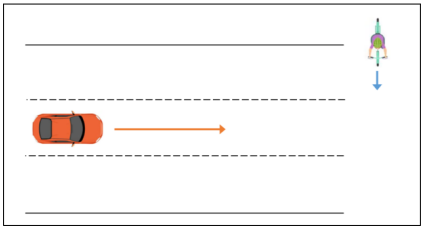
can active the emergency brake every time in this scenario.



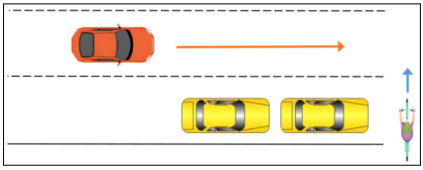
- When the vehicle detects that there is a two-wheeled bicycle moving at low speed in the driving direction, the AEB system will determine whether there is collision risk in real time. If there is a risk of collsion, the system will provide alarm and apply emergency braking to avoid or mitigate collision hazards.
- Limitations of AEB system: Due to the fact that the activation of the system is dependent on the environment, its own state and the state of the target, there is no guarantee that the system can active the emergency brake every time in this scenario.



- When the vehicle detects a two-wheeled bicycle passing horizontally ahead, the AEB system will determine whether there is a collision risk in real time. If there is a risk of collsion, the system will provide alarm and apply emergency braking to avoid or mitigate collision hazards.
- Limitations of AEB system: Due to the fact that the activation of the system is dependent on the environment, its own state and the state of the target, there is no guarantee that the system can active the emergency brake every time in this scenario.

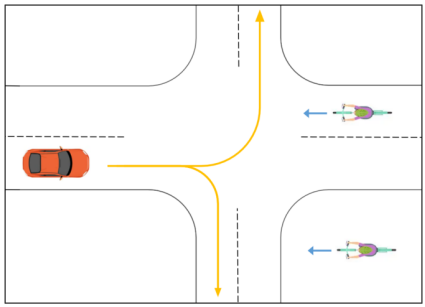


- In the case of visual field occlusion of the vehicle, AEB system will detect the possible horizontal crossing of two-wheeled bicycles and determine whether there is collision risk in real time. If there is a risk of collsion, the system will provide alarm and apply emergency braking to avoid or mitigate collision hazards.
- Limitations of AEB system: Due to the fact that the activation of the system is dependent on the environment, its own state and the state of the target, there is no guarantee that the system can active the emergency brake every time in this scenario.

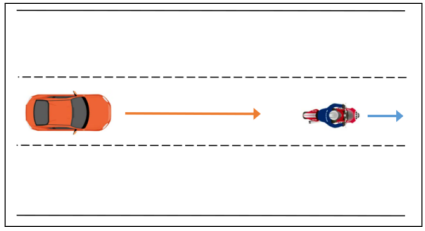


- When the vehicle turns and the system detects two-wheeled bicycles running in opposite directions, the AEB system will determine whether there is collision risk in real time. If there is a risk of collsion, the system will provide alarm and apply emergency braking to avoid or mitigate collision hazards.

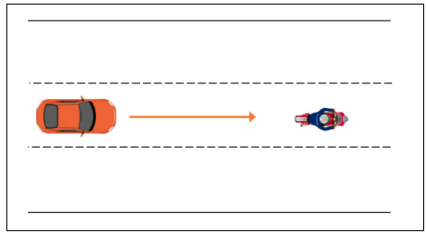
- Limitations of AEB system: Due to the fact that the activation of the system is dependent on the environment, its own state and the state of the target, there is no guarantee that the system can active the emergency brake every time in this scenario.



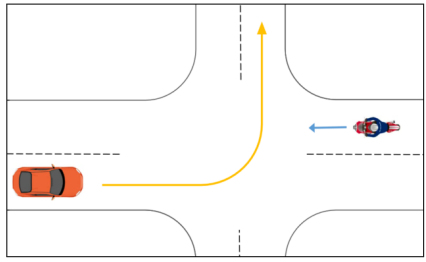
- When the vehicle detects that there is a two-wheeled scooter moving at low speed in the driving direction, the AEB system will determine whether there is collision risk in real time. If there is a risk of collsion, the system will provide alarm and apply emergency braking to avoid or mitigate collision hazards.
- Limitations of AEB system: Due to the fact that the activation of the system is dependent on the environment, its own state and the state of the target, there is no guarantee that the system can active the emergency brake every time in this scenario.



- When the vehicle detects a stationary two-wheeled scooter ahead, the AEB system will determine whether there is a collision risk in real time. If there is a risk of collsion, the system will provide alarm and apply emergency braking to avoid or mitigate collision hazards.
- Limitations of AEB system: Due to the fact that the activation of the system is dependent on the environment, its own state and the state of the target, there is no guarantee that the system can active the emergency brake every time in this scenario.

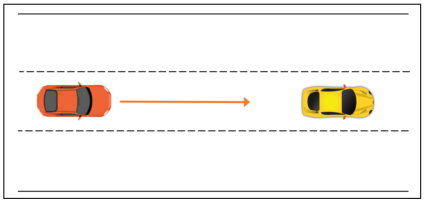


- WWhen the vehicle turns and the system detects the two-wheeled scooter running in the opposite direction, the AEB system will determine whether there is collision risk in real time. If there is a risk of collsion, the system will provide alarm and apply emergency braking to avoid or mitigate collision hazards.
- Limitations of AEB system: Due to the fact that the activation of the system is dependent on the environment, its own state and the state of the target, there is no guarantee that the system can active the emergency brake every time in this scenario.

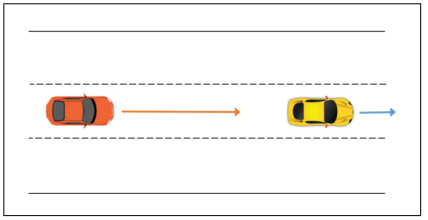


- For vehicle scenarios

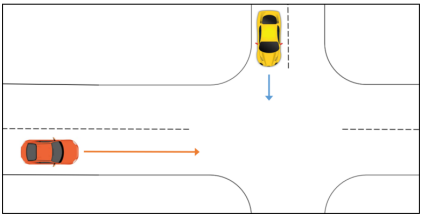
- When the vehicle detects a stationary vehicle ahead, the AEB system will determine whether there is a collision risk in real time. If there is a risk of collsion, the system will provide alarm and apply emergency braking to avoid or mitigate collision hazards.
- Limitations of AEB system: Due to the fact that the activation of the system is dependent on the environment, its own state and the state of the target, there is no guarantee that the system can active the emergency brake every time in this scenario.



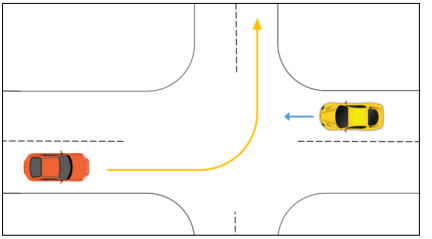
- When the vehicle detects that there is a vehicle driving at low speed or deceleration in the driving direction, the AEB system will determine whether there is collision risk in real time. If there is a risk of collsion, the system will provide alarm and apply emergency braking to avoid or mitigate collision hazards.
- Limitations of AEB system: Due to the fact that the activation of the system is dependent on the environment, its own state and the state of the target, there is no guarantee that the system can active the emergency brake every time in this scenario.



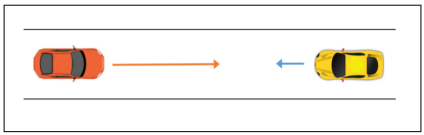
- When the vehicle detects a vehicle passing horizontally ahead, the AEB system will determine whether there is a collision risk in real time. If there is a risk of collsion, the system will provide alarm and apply emergency braking to avoid or mitigate collision hazards.
- Limitations of AEB system: Due to the fact that the activation of the system is dependent on the environment, its own state and the state of the target, there is no guarantee that the system can active the emergency brake every time in this scenario.



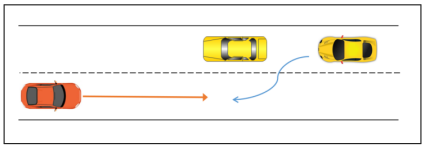
- When the vehicle turning system detects the opposite vehicle, the AEB system will determine whether there is collision risk in real time. If there is a risk of collsion, the system will provide alarm and apply emergency braking to avoid or mitigate collision hazards.
- Limitations of AEB system: Due to the fact that the activation of the system is dependent on the environment, its own state and the state of the target, there is no guarantee that the system can active the emergency brake every time in this scenario.



- When the vehicle detects an opposite retrograde vehicle ahead, the AEB system will determine whether there is a collision risk in real time. If there is a risk of collsion, the system will provide alarm and apply emergency braking to avoid or mitigate collision hazards.
- Limitations of AEB system: Due to the fact that the activation of the system is dependent on the environment, its own state and the state of the target, there is no guarantee that the system can active the emergency brake every time in this scenario.



- When the vehicle detects that there is a retrograde vehicle overtaking in front of it, the AEB system will determine whether there is collision risk in real time. If there is a risk of collsion, the system will provide alarm and apply emergency braking to avoid or mitigate collision hazards.
- Limitations of AEB system: Due to the fact that the activation of the system is dependent on the environment, its own state and the state of the target, there is no guarantee that the system can active the emergency brake every time in this scenario.



**System limitations**

- In the following cases, PEB system may be affected or give no response:
  - On rainy, snowy or foggy days, large water splashes, or exposure to direct sunlight or glaring lights, or significantly varying lighting conditions
  - Dirty, hazy, damaged or blocked sensor.
  - Malfunction of front mmWave radars due to interference from other front millimeter-wave radar sources such as strong radar reflection in multi-story car parks.
- In complex traffic, the system may be unable to properly respond to the following circumstances:
  - Pedestrians or vehicles move too quickly into the sensor's detection range.
  - Pedestrians are obscured by other objects.
  - The typical profile of pedestrians are indistinguishable from the background.
  - Pedestrians are not detected, due to, for example, coverage by special clothing or other materials.
  - The vehicle travels on a curve with a small turning radius.
- Oncoming Traffic Scenario
  - For oncoming traffic, system will apply emergent brake automatically when detecting a possible risk of collision with oncoming vehicles. If an accident cannot be avoided, the system helps to reduce the collision speed.

**Precautions**

- The PEB system cannot ensure zero collision. In complex traffic, the system cannot always clearly identify all the vehicles or pedestrians. It may trigger unnecessary warning or braking action for well covers, iron plates or road signs.

- Make sure to drive safely and observe surrounding traffic conditions. The AEB system is not a substitute for normal braking operation in any event.
- Do not overly rely on the PEB system as this may result in severe injuries or deaths. The system is only an auxiliary safety tool. The driver must always keep a safe distance from vehicles ahead, control the speed, and be ready to brake or steer away when necessary. The driver must keep control of vehicle at all times and be fully responsible for safe driving.
- The AEB system is activated only when it exceeds certain speeds. Careful driving is always required, because the system may not be triggered correctly.
- The AEB system cannot work normally when the ESC function is disabled or the fault light is on.
- Whenever PEB emits an alarm, the driver must apply the brake based on current traffic conditions or turn the steering wheel to avoid obstacles.
- If the vehicle travels too close to the vehicle ahead for too long, a safety distance warning will be given. If the vehicle ahead brakes suddenly, collision may be unavoidable.
- In the event of an emergency alarm, the system does not trigger the AEB if the driver has already reacted with awareness (e.g. when the driver turns the steering wheel or presses the accelerator pedal and brake pedal deeply).
- Front mmWave radar sensors may have a transient function failure from limited detection if the vehicle runs under special conditions, such as circular ramps or tunnels, for an extended period. The function can be recovered by restarting the vehicle or driving on normal roads for a while.
- Sometimes the surfaces of front mmWave radars or the multi-purpose camera are dirty or obscured by foreign objects, which can cause the sensor to become blind. At this point you need to clean the dirt and foreign matter.
- As the pedestrian protection function is limited by certain physical conditions, the driver must take timely and effective control of the vehicle under dangerous conditions.
- The system cannot completely protect pedestrians or avoid accidents and severe injuries on its own.
- Under certain complex conditions, such as on winding roads, the pedestrian protection function may trigger unnecessary warning or braking.
- There may also be unnecessary alarm and brake intervention in case of malfunctions in the pedestrian protection system, such as angular misalignment of the radar/multi-function video controller.
- The brake pedal becomes harder if AEB is triggered. A large amount of hydraulic pressure will be required to push the caliper in a short time and there will be a sizzling noise.
- The PEB system is triggered only when the doors are closed and the seat belt is fastened. In the following circumstances, it will fail to work in the following cases:
  - Any door is not closed or it is opened when the vehicle is moving.
  - Any seat belt has not been fastened or it is unfastened while the vehicle is travelling.
  - The driver accelerates or decelerates rapidly or turns the steering wheel quickly.

- System performance may be reduced in the following cases:
  - Strong front bumper impact from accidents or other causes
  - Improperly inflated or worn out tyres
  - Unqualified tyres installed.
  - Snow chains installed.
  - Use of a small spare tyre or tyre repair kit
- Make sure to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration of the multi-purpose camera in any of the following situations:
  - The front mmWave radar or multi-purpose camera has been removed.
  - Toe-in or rear camber has been adjusted during wheel alignment.
  - The position of multi-purpose camera change after a collision.
- Do not attempt to test the PEBS with objects such as cartons, iron plates and dummies, because in such cases, the system may not work normally, resulting in accidents.

**WARNING**

- PCW and AEB serve as driver assistance functions only, so the driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause PCW and AEB to fail.
- Use PCW and AEB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

## Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA) & Front Cross Traffic Braking (FCTB)

Front cross traffic alert (FCTA) and front cross traffic braking (FCTB) detects vehicles crossing the driveway at the front through millimeter wave radars on both sides of the front bumper to alert the driver and engage the brake if necessary. At low vehicle speeds, when the system detects a risk of collision with a vehicle crossing the driveway at the front, it provides the driver with visual and audible alerts; in the event of an impending collision, the vehicle brakes automatically.

### How to use

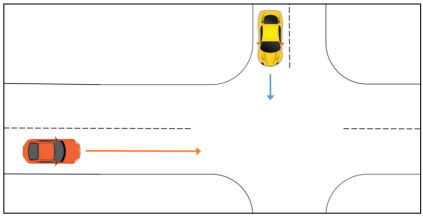
- To enable or disable FCTA and FCTB, go to → ADAS → Active Safety from the touchscreen.
- When FCTA is activated, the rearview indicator flashes and a chime sounds.
- When FCTB is activated, is displayed on the instrument cluster and a chime sounds, with AEB automatically braking the vehicle.
- In the event of FCTA/FCTB malfunction, the cluster displays .

### Function instructions

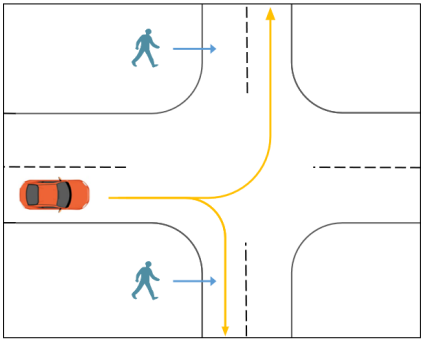
- System may be activated in the following senarios, whether or not it can be activated depends on a variety of factors such as the self vehicle, the target vehicle and the environment, we have not listed all the scenarios.
- When the system detects a vehicle passing laterally in front of it when the vehicle is traveling at low speed,

the system determines in real time whether there is a risk of collsion. If there is a risk of collsion, the system will provide alarm and apply emergency braking to avoid or mitigate collision hazards.

- Limitations of the system: Due to the fact that the activation of the system is dependent on the environment, its own state and the state of the target, there is no guarantee that the system can active the emergency brake every time in this scenario.



- When the vehicle turns at a low speed, when the system detects pedestrians crossing horizontally, the system will determine whether there is collision risk in real time. If there is a risk of collsion, the system will provide alarm and apply emergency braking to avoid or mitigate collision hazards.
- Limitations of the system: Due to the fact that the activation of the system is dependent on the environment, its own state and the state of the target, there is no guarantee that the system can active the emergency brake every time in this scenario.



**Precautions**

- While the system provides assistance in monitoring front left and right sides, it cannot replace the driver's observation and judgment. The driver must keep control of vehicle at all times and drive properly and is fully responsible for the vehicle.
- When a target vehicle is approaching from the side at a high speed, the FCTA/FCTB system may not be able to provide adequate warning.
- The driver must ensure the normal operation of the system, keeping mmWave radars on both side of the bumper in good condition. For example, dirt, snow, or other obstructions need to be cleared right away.
- In addition, detection may also be affected or delayed by noise or electromagnetic interference.
- Under some circumstances, it is difficult for the system to assist the driver, and detection may be affected or delayed. Possible circumstances include, but are not limited to:
  - The vehicle coming from the side changes the lane suddenly.
  - The target vehicle is obscured.

- The radar reflection cross-sectional area is too small (e.g. bicycles, E-bikes, etc.).
- The vehicle is running under severe weather, such as rain or snow.
- MmWave radar(s) come off, are loosely installed, or are blocked.
- The vehicle encounters complex metal guardrails or similar road conditions.

- The system does not work when:
  - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
  - FCTA or FCTB is switched off.
  - The vehicle is not in Drive.
  - Four doors are open.
  - System initialisation has not been complete yet.
  - MmWave radars fail.
  - Vehicles coming from the front left or right side are detected too late at sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
- Influence of vibration or collision on mmWave radar sensor calibration can degrade system performance. Should this occur, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider

**WARNING**

- FCTA and FCTB are only for driver assistance. The driver is fully responsible for maintaining driving safety.
- FCTA may fail and FCTB may fail to work or respond promptly due to factors such as unfavorable weather and road conditions.

**WARNING**

- Use FCTA and/or FCTB based on your needs along with traffic and road conditions.

## High Beam Assist System(HMA)

The High Beam Assist (HMA) system uses a multi-function video controller on the front windscreen to determine current driving conditions and, when the vehicle speed is above 35km/h, it automatically activated and switch between low and high beams.

**Description of working state**

- HMA standby:
  - HMA When the function is enabled but not activated yet, the icon is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- HMA activated:
  - After being enabled, HMA is activated when the light switch is in Auto, necessary lighting conditions are met, and the vehicle speed is above 35 km/h. At this time, is displayed on the cluster.
- HMA failure:
  - When HMA fails, is displayed on the cluster.

**How to use**

- To enable or disable HMA, go to → ADAS → Driver Assistance from the touchscreen.
- With the function enabled, when you set the light switch to the auto lights position, the light meets conditions

and vehicle speed exceeds 35 km/h, the system automatically switches between low and high beams based on the current driving environment.

**Precautions**

- HMA serves as an auxiliary feature for light control. It is recommended to use this function when driving at high speeds. However, HMA cannot completely replace the driver, and the driver shall always be mindful of proactively switching between high and low beams according to applicable road laws and regulations, as well as any changes in the road environment.
- When the vehicle is in a highly dynamic state, such as when ABS or ESC is activated, beam switching is suppressed.
- HMA is disabled when the ambient light is too strong, or when the driver turns on fog lights or turn signals, sets the wipers to high speed, reverses the vehicle, or turns the light switch to a non-Auto position.
- Even if HMA is working after activation, it may experience incorrect triggering or stop working due to inevitable environmental factors and conditions. Therefore, driver control is always necessary. Typical conditions are as follows:
  - The driver's stick operation to switch to the high beam is prioritized.
  - The vehicle is running in extremely unfavorable weather, such as heavy fog, heavy rain, or heavy snow.
  - There are traffic participants with poor lighting (such as pedestrians and bicycles), railways or waterways nearby, or wild animals on the roads.
  - There are highly reflective objects around (e.g., traffic signs on highways, water reflection on the road surface, etc.).
  - The front windshield is dirty, covered in mist, or blocked by stickers or decorations.
- In case there is a collision or the sensor has been reassembled, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for sensor calibration so as to avoid affecting system performance.

**WARNING**

- HMA serves as a driver assistance function only, so the driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause HMA to fail.
- Use AFL based on your needs along with traffic and road conditions.

## Lane Departure Assist (LDA) System

The lane departure assist (LDA) system consists of lane departure warning (LDW) and lane departure prevention (LDP).

**Lane Departure Warning (LDW)**

- LDW detects lane lines up ahead through a multi-purpose camera. When the vehicle is traveling at a speed within 60 km/h - 150 km/h and the driver unintentionally drifts out of the lane, LDW warns the driver by an audible alarm, visual alarm, and/or steering wheel vibration.

**Lane Departure Prevention (LDP)**

- LDP detects lane lines up ahead through a multi-purpose camera. When the vehicle is traveling at a speed

within 60 km/h - 150 km/h and the driver unintentionally drifts out of the lane towards the line, LDP activates and turns the steering wheel gently by providing reverse torque through the electric power steering (EPS) system, to prevent the vehicle from moving out of its lane.

- If LDP activates and remains active for over 5 seconds, it emits an alarm at the 5th second, which lasts until LDP deactivates. Alarm methods include acoustic alarm and optical alarm. If the system is activated twice or more within a continued 180-second cycle, the system alarms immediately. For the third activation (and any further ones), alarms are extended by at least 12 seconds.

**How to use**

- To enable or disable LDA, go to multimedia touchscreen → ADAS → Driving Assist → Lane Assist System.
- There are three LDW modes: audible alarm, steering wheel vibration, and both.
- When LDW or LDP is enabled, the instrument cluster displays .
- When activated, LDW emits an alarm (audio alarm, optical alarm and steering wheel vibration), and the corresponding virtual lane line on the instrument cluster will turn red.
- When activated, LDP emits an alarm (audio alarm and/or optical alarm). on the cluster flashes twice, and the corresponding virtual lane line turns blue.
- In the event of malfunction, is displayed on the cluster.

**System limitations**

- The LDA system may detect incorrect or no lane lines in complex traffic. In the following situations, the system may fail or its performance significantly degrade:
  - The visibility is poor in snowy, rainy and foggy days.
  - The front windshield is dirty and foggy or there is an obstruction in front of the multi-function video controller.
  - Glare is caused by direct sunlight, reflections from accumulated water on the road surface, incoming vehicles on the opposite lane, etc.
  - Sudden changes in light, such as when the vehicle is entering or exiting a tunnel
  - Lane lines obscured by tree shadows on roads in direct sunlight in sunny days.
  - The boundary lines between the road and the side grass, soil or curb, etc. are unidentifiable.
- The function may be deactived automatically when the vehicle is on the narrow road to avoid the activated fuction from disturbing occupants.

**Precautions**

- LDWS will be suppressed if the driver turns on the turn signals and changes lanes in the direction indicated by the turn signals.
- LDWS may be suppressed if the vehicle travels over lane lines, or lane lines are unclear, too thin, worn, blurred or covered by dirt/snow.
- LDW may be suppressed if the lane is too wide or too narrow, the number of lanes increases or decreases, lane

markings change suddenly on ramps or exits, or in situations of complex line crossings.

- LDW may be suppressed on slopes or winding roads when the vehicle travels too close to the vehicle ahead or the vehicle ahead blocks lane lines.
- LDW may be suppressed when the vehicle jolts, accelerates or decelerates too quickly, or takes a sharp turn.
- The system operation may be affected if the windshield within the visual field of the multi-purpose camera is cracked, if the front windshield glass is dyed or coated in a manner that is not compliant with standards, if any reflective object is placed on the dashboard, or if any other object interferes with camera sight.
- For safety reasons, do not test LDW function on your own. The field of view of the multi-function video controller shall not be blocked by objects or interfered with by strong light. Transient obstruction of vision and bright light disturbance can temporarily deactivate the function, which can recover on its own when the field of vision becomes normal. If it does not, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Disabling LSS is recommended in the following circumstances:
  - Driving in a sporty style
  - Severe weather conditions
  - On uneven roads
- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include but are not limited to:
  - Unclear lane lines
  - Incomplete lane lines
- Situations that may cause recognition difficulty or late function activation of the multi-purpose camera include, but are not limited to:
  - The multi-purpose camera comes off, is loosely installed, or is blocked.
  - The vehicle is running under extreme weather, such as rain, snow, or smog.
  - The multi-purpose camera is partially or completely blocked.

**WARNING**

- LDA is only for driver assistance. The driver is fully responsible for maintaining driving safety.
- LDA may fail due to factors such as unfavorable weather and road conditions.
- Use LDA based on your needs along with traffic and road conditions.

## Emergency Lane Keeping Assist(ELKA)

The emergency lane keeping assist (ELKA) system detects lane lines up ahead through a multi-purpose camera. It also detects vehicles in adjacent lanes approaching from behind through rear corner mmWave radars. ELKA activates and provides reverse torque through EPS to keep the vehicle travel in the current lane, when the vehicle, at a speed within 50 km/h - 150 km/h, is about to cross the road shoulder or may collide with an oncoming vehicle or an overtaking vehicle in an adjacent lane because the driver crosses a solid lane line.

**How to use**

- Enable or disable this function in → ADAS → Driving Assist → Lane Support System (LSS).
- When ELKA activates, the instrument cluster display that flashes.
- When ELKA fails, the cluster displays .
- When ELKA is deactivated manually, the cluster displays .

**System Limitations**

- In a complex road traffic environment, ELKA may incorrectly or fail to detect lane lines. In the following cases, ELKA may not work or its performance may be significantly worsened:
  - Poor visibility on snowy, rainy, or foggy days
  - The front windshield is dirty and foggy or there is an obstruction in front of the multi-function video controller.
  - Glare is caused by direct sunlight, reflections from accumulated water on the road surface, incoming vehicles on the opposite lane, etc.
  - Sudden changes in light, such as when the vehicle is entering or exiting a tunnel
  - Lane lines obscured by tree shadows on roads in direct sunlight in sunny days.
  - The boundary lines between the road and the side grass, soil or curb, etc. are unidentifiable.
- The function may be deactived automatically when the vehicle is on the narrow road to avoid the activated fuction from disturbing occupants.

**Precautions**

- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include, but are not limited to:
  - Pedestrians, animals, and specialty or specially-shaped vehicles
  - Unclear or incomplete lane lines.
- Situations that may result in detection failure of the multi-purpose camera or late alarms include, but are not limited to:
  - The multi-purpose camera comes off, is loosely installed, or is blocked.
  - The vehicle is running under extreme weather, such as rain, snow, or smog.
  - The multi-purpose camera is partially or completely blocked.
- Situations that may result in detection failure of mmWave radars or late alarms include, but are not limited to:
  - MmWave radar(s) come off, are loosely installed, or are blocked.
  - The vehicle is running under extreme weather, such as rain, snow, or smog.
  - The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.

**WARNING**

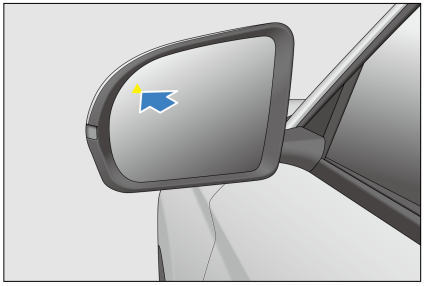
- ELKA is only for driver assistance. The driver is fully responsible for maintaining driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause LDA to fail.
- Use ELKA based on your needs along with traffic and road conditions.

# Blind Spot Assist System (BSA)

The blind spot assist (BSA) system includes blind spot detection (BSD), rear cross traffic alert (RCTA) and rear cross traffic brake (RCTB), rear collision warning (RCW), door open warning (DOW). It detects environment behind the vehicle through radars installed on both sides of the rear bumper so as to remind the driver of safe driving.

**Blind Spot Detection (BSD)***

- The alarm indicator on the corresponding external mirror lights up, when the vehicle is traveling at a speed within 15 km/h - 150 km/h and rear corner mmWave radars either detect an adjacent vehicle in the driver's blind spot, or a vehicle quickly approaching from an adjacent lane. If the turn signal for the same side is turned on at this moment, the alarm indicator on the side mirror flashes to alert the driver of a risky lane change.



**Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)***

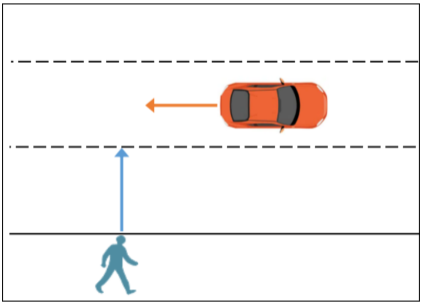
- When the vehicle is reversing at a speed no more than 15 km/h, the RCTA system detects the vehicles traveling in the blind spot at the back through rear corner mmWave radars. After judging that a vehicle approaching from behind poses a risk of collision, RCTA activates external mirror alarm indicators to flash and emits an audible alarm, so as to warn the driver, reducing the possibility of collision.

**Rear Cross Traffic Brake (RCTB)***

- When the vehicle is reversing at a speed no more than 9 km/h, the RCTA system detects the vehicles traveling in the blind spot at the back through rear corner mmWave radars. If the system judges that a target approaching from behind poses a risk of collision, emergency braking is performed automatically.

**Function instructions**

- RCTB may be activated in the following senarios, whether or not it can be activated depends on a variety of factors such as the self vehicle, the target vehicle and the environment, we have not listed all the RCTB scenarios.
- When the system detects a pedeatrian crossing laterally at the side and rear when the vehicle is backing up at low speed, the system determines in real time whether there is a risk of collsion. If there is a risk of collsion, the system will apply emergency braking to avoid or mitigate collision hazards.
- Limitations of the system: Due to the fact that the activation of the system is dependent on the environment, its own state and the state of the target, there is no guarantee that the system can active the emergency brake every time in this scenario.



**Rear Collision Warning (RCW)***

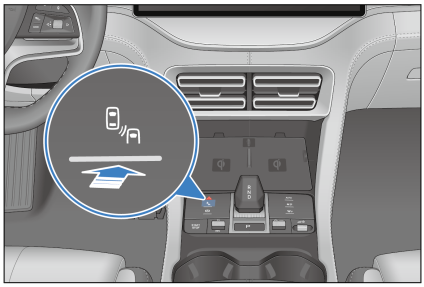
- At vehicle speeds between 5-146 km/h, if rear corner mmWave radar sensors detect a risk of collision with a vehicle approaching too quickly from behind on the current lane, the hazard warning light turns on to warn the driver in that vehicle against a possible collision.

**Door Open Warning (DOW)***

- DOW is realised with rear corner mmWave radars installed on both sides of the rear bumper. When the vehicle is stationary with doors unlocked, the system keeps indicators on side mirrors solid on to warn the driver if moving objects, such as bicycles or motorcars, approach from behind on an adjacent lane. At the same time, a prompt message is displayed on the instrument cluster. If the driver attempts to open the door at this time, indicators on side mirrors begin to flash and a chime sounds.

**How to Use**

Enable or disable BSD, RCTA, RCTB, RCW, or DOW in → ADAS → Active Safety → Blind Spot Assist.



When the blind spot assist system is disabled, no relevant indicators are displayed on the instrument cluster.

When the blind spot assist system is standing by, if vehicle conditions, such as speed or gear status, do not meet the requirements of any function, is displayed on the instrument cluster and blind spot assist will not be activated.

If the blind spot assist system malfunctions, is displayed on the instrument cluster.

When the blind spot assist system is active, is displayed, meaning that the function has been activated and can trigger alarms at any time.

**System Limitations**

- Under some circumstances, it is difficult for the system to assist the driver, and detection may be affected or delayed. Possible circumstances include, but are not limited to:
  - The vehicle coming from behind changes the lane suddenly.
  - Vehicles coming from behind are detected too late at sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
  - The target vehicle is blocked.
  - A vehicle behind is running at a speed exceeding 80 km/h relative to the vehicle.
  - The turning radius is too small, or the vehicle is running in/out of a curve.
  - The vehicle is running under severe weather, such as rain or snow.
  - Rear corner mmWave radar(s) come off, are loosely installed, or are blocked.
  - The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - Targets that may not be responded include, but are not limited to, pedestrians and animals.

- The environment contains electromagnetic interference or other influences.

- The calibration of rear corner mmWave radars may be affected by vibration or collision, resulting in compromised BSA performance. If this is detected, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

**Precautions**

While the BSA system provides assistance in monitoring blind spots of rearview mirrors, it cannot replace the driver's observation and judgment. The driver must keep control of vehicle at all times and drive properly and is fully responsible for the vehicle.

BSD may fail to adequately exert the warning function when the target vehicle is approaching from behind very fast.

The driver shall ensure that BSA can operate normally, keep the environment of rear corner mmWave radars in good condition, and timely clear any obstructions such as dirt or snow.

BSD activates an alarm when irrelevant targets at the rear sides of or behind the vehicle (e.g., large roadside repair signs, large roadside billboards, reflectors in tunnels and other objects with high radar cross sections) are mistakenly detected as target vehicles.

**WARNING**

- Blind spot assist serves as a driver assistance function only, so the driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- BSA may fail due to factors such as unfavorable weather and road conditions.

**WARNING**

- Use BSA based on your needs along with traffic and road conditions.

## Traffic Sign Recognition System

The traffic sign recognition (TSR) system identifies speed limit signs through the multi-purpose camera and map*, displays such signs on the current road on the instrument cluster, and sends alarm messages to the driver when vehicle speed exceeds the detected speed limit.

**How to use**

- To enable or disable TSR, go to → ADAS → Driver Assistance → TSR from the touchscreen.
- When TSR recognizes the current traffic sign, the instrument cluster displays 

.
- When TSR is unsure whether the speed limit value currently recognized is suitable for the current road environment, the cluster displays 

.
- When there is no speed limit value for the traffic sign recognition system, the cluster displays 

.
- When TSR experiences reduced performance, the cluster displays 

.
- When TSR experiences reduced performance and is unsure whether the speed limit value currently recognized is suitable for the current

road environment, the cluster displays  .

- If the TSR system malfunctions, The cluster displays  .
- When TSR is disabled manually, the cluster displays  .
- The specific numbers displayed in the indicators depend on the actual traffic signs.
- TSR features a power-off memory function. When the vehicle is powered on again, TSR restores the speed limit state and value before the last power-off.

**Precautions**

- The traffic sign recognition system can identify speed limit signs only, and will not control speed. The control over the vehicle always vests in the driver. Please drive properly.
- Weight limit signs not in standard size as per national regulations may mistakenly be identified as speed limit signs.
- If a speed limit sign is unclear or distorted, inclined, reflective, partly blocked or covered, the camera may be unable to recognise the sign completely or clearly.
- TSR performance depends on weather conditions, lighting, and sign visibility. The system may fail to or incorrectly identify the sign at night or sunset, in rainy, foggy, hazy, snowy or dusty environment, when light is coming from the back of the vehicle, or when there is a sudden change in lighting.
- When a collision occurs on the vehicle or the camera sensor is reassembled, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized service provider to calibrate the sensor to avoid affecting the performance of the system.
- Vehicles sold in Europe need to be networked for recognition of Traffic Jams, Construction Zones and Accident Ahead, provided that TSR supports the recognition of these signs. It is recommended to use the function under WiFi/hotspot connection (you can also turn on "TSR Mobile Data Switch", but this will bring traffic consumption, and if the traffic reaches the current month traffic limit, the function will not be used).

**WARNING**

- TSR only serves as a driving assistance function, so the driver must be fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause TSR to fail or lead to late alarms.
- Use TSR based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

## Intelligent Speed Limit Control (ISLC)

- The Intelligent Speed Limit Control (ISLC) system integrates ACC and TSR. With ISLC enabled, if the vehicle speed exceeds the value on a recognized speed limit sign, ISLC issues a prompt about whether to adjust the ACC cruise speed to the recognized speed limit. After confirmation (done by pulling down the ACC speed control lever) from the driver, ISLC automatically sets the ACC cruise speed to the recognized speed limit.
- This function is accessible at the 20-95 mph (30-150 km/h) range of speed.

**How to use**

- To enable or disable ISLC, go to → ADAS → Driver Assistance → TSR → ISLC from the touchscreen.
- When the TSR system is disabled, the ISLC switch is grayed out and unusable. ISLC is turned off at this time. The ISLC switch will be usable after the TSR system is enabled again.
- ISLC can be activated provided that ACC is active.

**Precautions**

- As ISLC integrates ACC and TSR, follow precautions relevant to ACC and TSR while using ISLC (see the previous chapters for details).
- ISLC is only for driver assistance. The driver must always maintain control of the vehicle.
- ISLC performance is affected by weather, lighting conditions and legibility of road signs. Conditions such as night, backlighting, sunset, rain, fog, haze, snow and ice cover, surface dust, and sudden changes in brightness may result in reduced recognition capability or failure to recognize speed limit signs.

**WARNING**

- ISLC only serves as a driver assistance function, so the driver must be fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause ISLC to fail or lead to late alarms.
- Use ISLC based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

## Driver Attention Warning system

Driver attention warning (DAW) system recognizes the level of the driver fatigue based on the state of the driver's handling of the vehicle, such as steering wheel angle, braking, gearing and lane changing. When it recognizes the driver is in a state of fatigue, it will remind the driver through the instrument pop-up window and voice made to improve driving safety. The driver attention warning system is on by default after every power-up.

**How to Use**

With the vehicle powered on, set the warning in Multimedia System → Driving Assist → Driver Attention Warning (DAW). For safety considerations, the setting is valid on the current trip only, and will revert to the default mode on the next trip.

**CAUTION**

- The driver attention warning system is only an auxiliary system and is not capable of effective recognition and alarm-raising in all situations. It cannot completely replace the driver's subjective observation and judgment. The driver must maintain control of the vehicle at all times, complying with all road laws and regulations, and taking full responsibility for the vehicle.

**WARNING**

- The driver should pull over the vehicle as soon as possible when feeling tired.

# Child Presence Detection (CPD)*

After the vehicle is powered off, child presence detection is performed if any door is opened and then all doors are closed or locked. If child presence is detected, an alarm is given in the form of light flashing and honking. The A/C will be switched on soon after. To cancel the alarm, unlock or open any door.

### How to use

- For setting, go to "Child Presence Detection" via → ADAS → Driver Assistance from the touchscreen.
- Three options are provided: **OFF**, **ON**, and **Delay**.
- CPD is enabled by default when the vehicle is powered on, but the driver can manually disable it or delay the activation of "alarm and intervention" measures. Tap OFF to deactivate the alarm in this trip; Tap Delay to extend the alarm (for five minutes) in this trip.

### System Response

- If life presence is detected after the vehicle is powered down and locked, the initial alarm (light flashing and honking) starts within 10 seconds and will last for about six seconds.
- If life presence is detected after the vehicle is powered down and doors are closed (without locking the vehicle) , the initial alarm (light flashing and honking) starts within 10 seconds and will last for about six seconds.
- If not canceled, the alarm (light flashing and honking) escalates within 90 seconds and will last for about 25 minutes.
- The A/C will be switched on three minutes after alarm escalation if it is not canceled, and will keep running for about 30 minutes.

**CAUTION**

- Misidentification or false alarm could happen.
- The alarm may be given for adults, children, pets, or other lives detected.
- The alarm cannot be canceled by unlocking the vehicle from the app.
- The system may not be able to trigger an alarm or switch on the A/C if the SOC is low. Keeping the vehicle at high SOC is recommended.

**WARNING**

- While light flashing, honking, app message prompts, and A/C operation reduces the harm to the child(ren) in the vehicle, they cannot completely prevent harms.
- When a reminder is provided, check whether any child has been locked inside the vehicle promptly to avoid further harms.

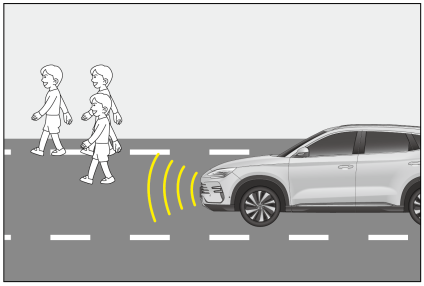
### Icons and pop-ups

| Vehicle Status Light | Pop-up window | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
|  |  | Deactivating Child Presence Detection |
|  |  | Child Presence Detection (CPD System fault |

## Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS)

AVAS means that a warning sound is made to pedestrians in the vicinity of the vehicle when the vehicle is traveling at a low speed.

- During driving forward:
  - When the vehicle speed is above 0 km/h but does not exceed 20 km/h, the warning sound increases with the increase in speed.
  - If the vehicle speed is above 20 km/h but does not exceed 30 km/h, the warning sound decreases with the increase in speed.



- If the vehicle speed is above 30 km/h, the warning sound stops automatically.
- When the vehicle is reversing, a continuous warning sound is given out.

**How to use**

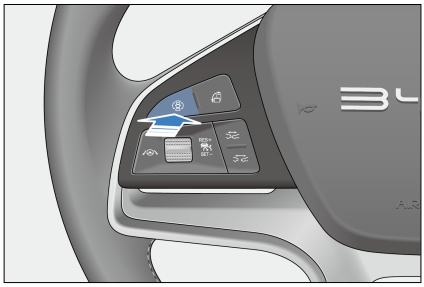
The acoustic vehicle alerting system can be set by going to → Vehicle Setting → Smart Reminder Setting.

**WARNING**

- The AVAS can only be turned off when pedestrians are unlikely to approach the vehicle (for example, in a traffic jam or on an expressway). The system must be turned on whenever pedestrians are likely to be around the vehicle.
- If the vehicle is running at low speed with AVAS turned off, it is unable to alert pedestrians to the vehicle approaching, decreasing vehicle safety.
- If the AVAS prompt sound cannot be heard when driving at a low speed, stop the vehicle in a relatively safe and quiet place, open a window, then drive in R gear and check whether you can hear an audible prompt from the front of the vehicle. If it is confirmed that there is no sound, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to deal with it.

# Panoramic View System

When the vehicle is powered up, the driver can access the panoramic view by pressing the panorama button on the steering wheel, or by tapping the vehicle image button on the display. When the R gear is engaged, the panoramic view is displayed automatically.



- Landscape mode:
- Tap the front, rear, right or left area of the vehicle icon on the left side to display a single view of the front, rear, right or left view of the vehicle in the right image area. In the front or rear single view, tap the image area twice to switch to 180˚ viewing angle in full screen. Tap the radar icon in the panoramic view to turn on the radar display, and tap it again to turn off the radar display. After the radar display is turned on, the monitor will display obstacle warning when the vehicle is approaching an obstacle.




- On the portrait screen:
- Tap any two areas (front, rear, left and right) of the lower left area to display the single views of the selected orientation in the above and right lower image areas. Click the vehicle map switching button on the lower left to switch the view between transparent vehicle and actual vehicle. After the vehicle starts, the image before last power-off is displayed on the invisible panoramic view interface. At this time, the foreign matters under the vehicle and in the surrounding blind spots may be inconsistent with the actual situation. The underbody image will be updated in real time only after the vehicle has moved, which must be driven beyond its length for a complete update.
- Switching to transparent chassis: tap the icon ①or tap the vehicle body in the left top view image to turn on/off transparent chassis view.
- Radar sensor alarm: tap the icon ②to activate/deactivate the radar sensor alarm for parking.




- 3D view: tap the icon ③ to turn on 3D panoramic view, which may be shown in different view angles by either dragging the image or by tapping a specific view icon.
- When the reverse gear is engaged, the system displays the panoramic view. The rear view displayed in the right area contains the vehicle reversing guide line.

**Interface icons:**

| Function | Corresponding icons | Operation description | Target state after operation | Remarks |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Panoramic view camera interface |  | Operate by touch. After a single touch, if it is highlighted as shown in the figure, it indicates that the panoramic view interface is entered. | Enter 2D or 3D panoramic view interface | |
| Setting Interface |  | Operate by touch. After a single touch, if it is highlighted as shown in the figure, it indicates that the panoramic view setting interface is entered. | Enter the panoramic view setting interface | |
| Panoramic view of non-transparent vehicle |  | Operate by touch. After a single touch, if it is not highlighted as shown in the figure, it indicates that the non-transparent panoramic function is activated. | The panoramic view vehicle body is switched from transparent vehicle to actual vehicle. | After switching, the aerial view and 2D view are all actual vehicle. |
| Transparent vehicle panoramic function |  | Operate by touch. After a single touch, if it is highlighted as shown in the figure, it indicates that the transparent panoramic function is activated. | The panoramic view vehicle body is switched from actual vehicle to transparent vehicle. | After switching, the aerial view and 2D view are all transparent vehicle. |
| Radar arc segment |  | Operate by touch. After a single touch, if it is highlighted as shown in the figure, it indicates that the radar arc segment is activated. | After the radar triggers the alarm, the arc segment and value indicating the radar distance will be displayed around the 2D vehicle body view. | |
| 3D panoramic function |  | Operate by touch. After a single touch, if it is highlighted as shown in the figure, it indicates that the 3D panoramic function is activated. | The panoramic view vehicle body switches from 2D to 3D. | |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2D panoramic function |  | Operate by touch. After a single touch, if it is highlighted as shown in the figure, it indicates that the 2D panoramic function is activated. | The panoramic view vehicle body switches from 3D to 2D. | |

**2D:**

| Function | Corresponding icons | Operation description | Target state after operation | Remarks |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2D front view |  | Operate by touch. After a single touch, the icon will be highlighted to activate the front view as shown in the figure. | The panoramic view interface is switched from any other 2D interface to 2D front view interface. If it is already the front view interface, there is no change. | The operations can also be completed through the corresponding upper, lower, left and right areas in the aerial view, which can get the same result. |
| 2D rear view |  | Operate by touch. After a single touch, the icon will be highlighted to activate the front view as shown in the figure. | The panoramic view interface is switched from any other 2D interface to 2D rear view interface. If it is already the rear view interface, there is no change. | The operations can also be completed through the corresponding upper, lower, left and right areas in the aerial view, which can get the same result. |
| 2D left view |  | Operate by touch. After a single touch, the icon will be highlighted to activate the front view as shown in the figure. | The panoramic view interface is switched from any other 2D interface to 2D left view interface. If it is already the left view interface, there is no change. | The operations can also be completed through the corresponding upper, lower, left and right areas in the |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | aerial view, which can get the same result. |
| 2D right view |  | Operate by touch. After a single touch, the icon will be highlighted to activate the front view as shown in the figure. | The panoramic view interface is switched from any other 2D interface to 2D right view interface. If it is already the right view interface, there is no change. | The operations can also be completed through the corresponding upper, lower, left and right areas in the aerial view, which can get the same result. |
| 2D front wide angle |  | Operate by touch. After a single touch, the icon will be highlighted to activate the front view as shown in the figure. | Full-screen front wide-angle view. | This view will be also displayed by the double click of front single view. |
| 2D rear wide angle |  | Operate by touch. After a single touch, the icon will be highlighted to activate the front view as shown in the figure. | Full-screen rear wide-angle view. | This view will be also displayed by the double click of rear single view. |
| 2D left and right side views |  | Operate by touch. After a single touch, the icon will be highlighted to activate the front view as shown in the figure. | The panoramic view interface is switched from any other 2D interface to 2D left and right side view interface. If it is already the left and right side view interface, there is no change. | |

**3D:**

| Function | Corresponding icons | Operation description | Target state after operation | Remarks |
|---|---|---|---|---|

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3D front view |  | Operate by touch. After a single touch, the icon will be highlighted to activate the front view as shown in the figure. | The panoramic view interface is switched from any other 3D interface to 3D front view interface. If it is already the front view interface, there is no change. | The operations can also be completed through the corresponding upper, lower, left and right areas in the aerial view, which can get the same result. |
| 3D rear view |  | Operate by touch. After a single touch, the icon will be highlighted to activate the front view as shown in the figure. | The panoramic view interface is switched from any other 3D interface to 3D rear view interface. If it is already the rear view interface, there is no change. | The operations can also be completed through the corresponding upper, lower, left and right areas in the aerial view, which can get the same result. |
| 3D left view |  | Operate by touch. After a single touch, the icon will be highlighted to activate the front view as shown in the figure. | The panoramic view interface is switched from any other 3D interface to 3D left view interface. If it is already the left view interface, there is no change. | The operations can also be completed through the corresponding upper, lower, left and right areas in the aerial view, which can get the same result. |
| 3D right view |  | Operate by touch. After a single touch, the icon will be highlighted to activate the front view as shown in the figure. | The panoramic view interface is switched from any other 3D interface to 3D right view interface. If it is already the right view interface, there is no change. | The operations can also be completed through the corresponding upper, lower, left and right areas in the aerial view, which can get the same result. |

**WARNING**

- The panoramic view system can provide transparent panoramic view to show the image below the vehicle. This function is only for assisting in observation of area below the vehicle during parking/ driving. Investigation of foreign

**WARNING**

objects below the vehicle and dangerous situations should be carried out in any other manner to ensure the safety of personnel and the vehicle.

**WARNING**

- When the vehicle runs at a low speed, the transparent panoramic view function is affected by speed fluctuation or multiple stops, so there will be misalignment between the images below the vehicle and that outside the vehicle.
- This system uses wide-angle fisheye cameras, so the object on the display screen may appear somewhat deformed in comparison with the actual object.
- The panoramic view system is only to be used for parking/ driving assistance. It is not safe to park or drive the car relying only on this system, because there are some blind spots in front of and behind the car. The surroundings of the car should be observed in other ways during the parking/ driving process, so as to avoid accidents.
- When the side mirrors are not extended in place, do not use the panoramic view system; and when the panoramic view system is used for parking/driving, ensure that all the car doors are closed.
- The distance to an object displayed on the panoramic view screen may be different from the distance perceived subjectively, especially when the object is closer to the vehicle. Assess the distance in various ways.
- Cameras are installed above the front grille, side mirrors, and the rear license plate. Make sure the cameras are unobstructed.
- To prevent affecting the performance of cameras, avoid

**WARNING**

directly washing these cameras when washing the vehicle body with high-pressure water gun. Wipe any water or dust off the camera in time.

- Protect the cameras from any impact to prevent damage or malfunction.
- After the vehicle is powered on, if you press the panoramic view start button or shift into reverse while the infotainment system is not fully activated, the output on the panoramic view screen will be delayed or the screen will flash. This is a normal part of the camera power-on process.
- After the vehicle starts, the image before last power-off is displayed on the invisible panoramic view interface. At this time, the foreign matters under the vehicle and in the surrounding blind spots may be inconsistent with the actual situation. The underbody image will be updated in real time only after the vehicle has moved, which must be driven beyond its length for a complete update.
- When any camera is damaged, the corresponding view will be black on the screen.

## Parking Assist System(PAS)

- When the vehicle is being parked, PAS uses radar sensors to detect obstacles and sends alarms through loudspeakers to alert the driver about the distance between the vehicle and obstacles.

- The parking assist system helps with reversing. The driver should observe the surroundings while reversing.

**WARNING**

- The parking assist system ceases to operate when the vehicle is moving at over 10 km/h or the D gear is engaged and kept over 10s.
- Do not place any articles within the sensors' working range.
- To prevent sensor malfunction, do not wash the sensor area with water or steam.

### Parking radar switch

- To activate or deactivate the parking assist system (PAS), go to → ADAS → Parking Assist → Parking Radar from the touchscreen.
- When the ignition is switched on and EPB is released, the parking assist system is enabled automatically.
- When enabled, the system raises an alarm if obstacles are found surrounding the vehicle; when disabled, it does not.

### Sensor Type

- When the sensor detects an obstacle, an image is displayed on the infotainment touchscreen* according to the location of the obstacle and its distance from the vehicle.
- When the driver conducts parallel parking or reverse parking, the sensor measures the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle and communicates this information through the infotainment touchscreen and the speaker. When using the system, be sure to pay attention to the surroundings.

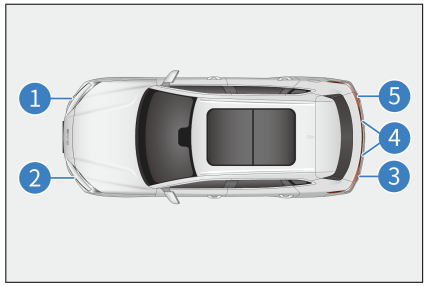
①Front right corner sensor*

②Front left corner sensor*

③Rear left corner sensor

④Rear left and right center sensors

⑤ Rear right corner sensor




### Distance Display Alarm

When the sensor detects an obstacle, the location of the obstacle and its approximate distance from the vehicle are displayed on the infotainment touchscreen, and the speaker beeps.

**Working examples of central sensor**

| Approximate distance (mm) | Display examples on the infotainment display screen | Alarm sound |
|---|---|---|
| About 700 to 1,200 |  | Slow |
| About 300 to 700 |  | Fast |
| About 0 to 300 |  | Constant |

**Working example of corner sensors**

| Approximate distance (mm) | Display examples on the infotainment display screen | Alarm sound |
|---|---|---|
| About 300 to 600 |  | Fast |
| About 0 to 300 |  | Constant |

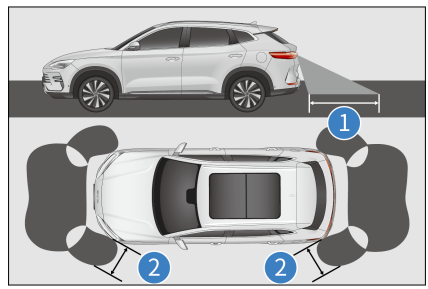
**Working Sensors and Their Detection Range**

All sensors work when reversing.

The detection range of the sensor is shown in the figure. The above detection range is limited. Before reversing, check the surroundings of the vehicle and then slowly reverse.

① About 1200mm

② About 600 mm




**Error message**

Failure of the reversing radar system is indicated by a message on the instrument cluster and a beep.




**REMINDER**

- The parking assist system is only for assistance, and is not a substitute for personal judgment. Be sure to operate the vehicle based on your observations.
- Sensors will not work properly if accessories or other objects are placed within their detection range.
- In some cases, the system cannot operate properly and will fail to detect certain objects as the vehicle approaches them. Therefore, be sure to observe the vehicle's surroundings at all times. Do not rely solely upon the system.

**Sensor Detecting Information**

- Certain vehicle conditions and surroundings may affect the performance of the sensor to accurately detect obstacles. Detection accuracy may be affected if:
  - There is dirt, accumulated water or fog on the sensor.
  - There is snow on the sensor or it is frozen.
  - The sensor is masked in any way.
  - The vehicle is significantly tilted or excessively overloaded.
  - The vehicle is moving on particularly bumpy roads, slopes, macadam or grass.
  - The sensor has been repainted.
  - It is very noisy in the vicinity of the vehicle due to the sound of vehicle horns, motorbike engines, the screech of brakes of large vehicles, or ultrasounds.
  - There's another vehicle equipped with parking assist system nearby.
  - The vehicle is fitted with a towing ring.
  - The bumper or sensor is strongly impacted.
  - The vehicle is approaching a high or zigzag curb.
  - The vehicle is in the hot sun or severely cold weather.
  - The installed suspension is not original and lower than the original ones.
- In addition to the above, the sensor may not be able to correctly determine the actual distance of some objects due to their specific shape.
- The shape and material of the obstacle may prevent the sensor from detecting it. Pay special attention to the following obstacles:
  - Electric wires, fences, ropes, etc.
  - Cotton, snow and other materials that absorb radio waves.
  - Oobject with sharp edges and corners.
  - Low obstacles.

- High obstacles with the upper part extending outward towards the vehicle.
- Object under the bumper.
- Object too near the vehicle.
- People in the vicinity of the vehicle (depending on the type of clothing).

- If an image is displayed on the infotainment touchscreen* or if the speaker chirps, this may be due to the sensor detecting an obstacle or external interference with the sensor. If this persists, it is recommended to have it serviced at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

**CAUTION**

- To prevent sensor malfunction, do not rinse or apply steam to the sensor area.

## Tire Pressure Monitoring

- The direct TPMS is an auxiliary system that monitors the tire pressure in real time, improves the driving safety and comfort of the vehicle, and reduces the accelerated wear of tires and the increase of vehicle energy consumption caused by insufficient tire pressure.
- The user can access the instrument cluster menu by pressing the button on the steering wheel, navigate to the driving information bar by pressing the ◁ and ▷ buttons, and then select the tyre pressure display interface using the roller on the button.

**System Function**

1. Power-on alarm

The tire is already in a low pressure state when the vehicle is powered off. When the vehicle is powered on again, a low pressure alarm is given immediately to prompt the user to inflate the tire before driving.

2. Low tire pressure alarm

- When the pressure compensated by temperature of any one of the four tires is lower than 85% of the standard tire pressure and the system is running, the tire pressure fault indicator lights up and the tire pressure value turns yellow. It is advisable to stop the vehicle and check the corresponding tires for slow leaks and to inflate them to a reasonable pressure.
- When the tire pressure compensated by temperature is greater than 90% of the standard value, the low pressure alarm is canceled.

3. Abnormal signal alarm function

If there is a fault when the system is running, the tire pressure fault indicator flashes and then keeps on, and the instrument cluster displays "Abnormal Signal". Please check whether the corresponding tire pressure monitoring module is normal and whether it is within the range of a large electric field for a long time.

4. Real-time display of tire pressure

Tire Pressure Monitor System(TPMS)can display the information on each tire pressure in real time when it is running.

**Precautions**

- The service time of the tire pressure monitoring module is related to the daily driving distance and other related factors.
- The tire pressure monitoring module transmits tire pressure and

other information to the display regularly.Therefore, if the tire pressure suddenly drops or there is a flat tire, the monitoring module can only transmit data to the display in the next monitoring. Therefore, it may cause the driving to be out of control. If a damaged tire is accompanied by the monitoring module damage and thus no message can be sent, or if it is suspected that a tire has been damaged, stop driving immediately, instead of waiting for the display to send an alarm signal.

- Incorrect installation of the tire pressure monitoring module affects the air tightness of the tires. It is recommended that the monitoring module be installed and replaced by professional technicians from a BYD authorized dealer or service provider according to the installation instructions.
- When the tires are rotated or the tire pressure monitoring module is replaced, the entire tire pressure monitoring system needs to be rematched, which is recommended to be performed by a professional technician from a BYD authorized dealer or service provider; otherwise, this system may fail.
- Since tire pressure varies with regional temperatures, inflate or deflate the tires according to the values displayed on the instrument cluster and the standard tire pressure value.
- TPMS features wireless transmission and its reception performance may be worsened in environments with severe interference.

**CAUTION**

- If the tire pressure is not normal, the system will not prevent the vehicle from traveling. Therefore, each time before driving, the vehicle should be started statically to check whether the tire pressure meets the requirements specified by the manufacturer. If not, do not drive the vehicle. Otherwise, the vehicle will be damaged or personal injury will occur.
- If pressure is found to be abnormal while driving, check the tire pressure immediately. If the low pressure warning light comes on, avoid sharp turns or emergency braking, and reduce vehicle speed, pull it over to the curb and stop as soon as possible. Driving with low tire pressure can cause permanent damage to tires and increase the likelihood of tire scrapping. Serious tire damage can lead to traffic accidents, resulting in serious injuries or deaths.

**Direct Tire Pressure Monitoring System**

- The direct TPMS is an auxiliary system that monitors the tire pressure in real time, improves the driving safety and comfort of the vehicle, and reduces the accelerated wear of tires and the increase of vehicle energy consumption caused by insufficient tire pressure.
- The user can go to the instrument cluster menu by  on the steering wheel, switch to the driving information bar by ◁ and ▷ of  , and select the tire pressure display interface by the roller on  .

**Tire pressure system alarm**

- When the pressure compensated by temperature of any one of the

four tires is lower than 85% of the standard tire pressure and the system is running, the tire pressure fault indicator lights up and the tire pressure value turns yellow. It is advisable to stop the vehicle and check the corresponding tires for slow leaks and to inflate them to a reasonable pressure.

- When the temperature of any one of the four tires is higher than 85°C for 3 consecutive minutes, the tire pressure system gives a high-temperature alarm, and the corresponding tire temperature indicator turns yellow. It is recommended to stop the vehicle and continue driving only after the tire temperature cools down.
- When one or more tires leak quickly and this system is running, the tire pressure fault indicator flashes and the displayed tire pressure value becomes red. Please stop the vehicle in time and replace the tires or contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- When the system is running, if a fault occurs, the tire pressure fault warning light is solid on after flashing, and the message "Abnormal signal" or "Please check the tire pressure monitoring system" is displayed on the instrument cluster. In that case, please check whether the corresponding tire pressure monitoring module is normal and whether it is within the range of a large electric field for a long time. If the alarm persists for a long time, please contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

**CAUTION**

- The service time of the tire pressure monitoring module is related to the daily driving distance and other related factors.

**CAUTION**

- The tire pressure monitoring module transmits tire pressure and other information to the display regularly.Therefore, if the tire pressure suddenly drops or there is a flat tire, the monitoring module can only transmit data to the display in the next monitoring. Therefore, it may cause the driving to be out of control. If a damaged tire is accompanied by the monitoring module damage and thus no message can be sent, or if it is suspected that a tire has been damaged, stop driving immediately, instead of waiting for the display to send an alarm signal.
- Incorrect installation of the tire pressure monitoring module affects the air tightness of the tires. It is recommended that the monitoring module be installed and replaced by professional technicians from a BYD authorized dealer or service provider according to the installation instructions.
- Since tire pressure varies with regional temperatures, inflate or deflate the tires according to the values displayed on the instrument cluster and the standard tire pressure value.
- If the vehicle is equipped with electrical accessories not approved by BYD, the tire pressure monitoring system may be disturbed. In this case, do not misunderstand it as a tire pressure system fault.
- For wheel rim replacement, spare tire* installation, or tire rotation for the four wheels, the tire

**CAUTION**

pressure system should be reset. Please drive the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for resetting.

**WARNING**

- If the tire pressure is abnormal, this system does not prevent the vehicle from driving. Therefore, each time before driving, the user should start the vehicle statically to check whether the tire pressure meets the tire pressure value specified by the manufacturer. If not, do not drive the vehicle; otherwise, vehicle damage or personal injuries may be caused.
- If pressure is found to be abnormal while driving, check the tire pressure immediately. If the low pressure warning light comes on, avoid sharp turns or emergency braking, and reduce vehicle speed, pull it over to the curb and stop as soon as possible. Driving with low tire pressure can cause permanent damage to tires and increase the likelihood of tire scrapping. Serious tire damage can lead to traffic accidents, resulting in serious injuries or deaths.

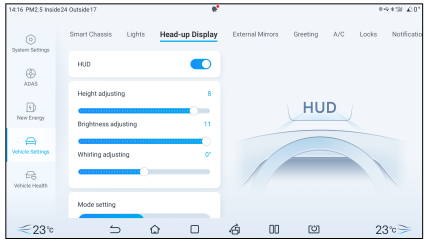
# Head-up Display (HUD)

### Head-up Display (HUD)*

HUD shows essential information (such as vehicle speed, speed limit, ACC, lane departure and BSD) that is projected outside the front windshield and reflected to the driver's field of view. This avoids frequent switching of eye focus and improves driving safety。

### How to use

To activate or deactivate the HDC, go to (infotainment system) → ADAS. HUD is enabled by default. The system defaults to previous settings when the vehicle starts.




### Set HUD

- Height Adjusting: 21 levels of brightness adjustment (-10 to 10) for HUD virtual images (default level: 0).
- Brightness Adjusting: 11 levels of height adjustment (1 to 11) for HUD virtual images (default level: 6).
- Whirling Adjusting: 11 levels of angle adjustment for HUD virtual images (default level: 0°).
- Mode Setting: Select the classic mode (default) or snow mode according to the driving environment.
- Settings optional for display: Safe driving assistance can be selected and is enabled by default.Click again to uncheck the status and close the item.

**CAUTION**

- Do not put articles on the head-up display.
- Wipe the dust on the dust-proof board with soft cotton cloth or paper towel.

**CAUTION**

- No water or other liquid is allowed to flow into the opening of the head-up display.

## Driving Safety System

For better driving safety, the following driving safety systems works automatically based on driving conditions. However, these systems only provide assistance, and excessive reliance on them is not recommended.

**Intelligent Power Braking System**

The intelligent power braking system is an advanced decoupled electro-hydraulic braking system, incorporating vacuum booster, electronic vacuum pump, and ABS/ESC functionality. This system, based on the driver's braking demand, provides power assistance for braking when needed. It also features advanced control functions like ABS, electronic brakeforce distribution (EBD), traction control system (TCS), vehicle dynamic control (VDC), comfort stop (CST), and comfort regenerative braking system (CRBS) that enhance vehicle stability, comfort, and brake energy recovery efficiency.

**Vehicle Dynamics Control(VDC)**

When the vehicle turns suddenly while running, the VDC system determines the driver's intention based on such information as steering wheel's angle and vehicle speed, and continuously compares with the actual condition. If the vehicle swerves from the normal lane, the VDC corrects the situation by engaging brakes to the corresponding wheels to help the driver control skidding and maintain directional stability.

**Traction Control System(TCS)**

TCS prevents drive wheels from slipping during acceleration by reducing the engine power. It also applies braking forces when necessary to prevent drive wheels from idling. It makes it easy for the vehicle to start, accelerate, and climb under adverse driving conditions.

**WARNING**

- TCS may not work effectively in the following situations:
  - When the vehicle is running on a wet and slippery road, TCS may be unable to control the direction and meet the power requirements, even if it is functional;
  - Do not drive in conditions where the vehicle may lose its stability and power.

**Hill Hold Control(HHC)**

After the brake pedal is released, HHC maintains brake pressure for one second to prevent backward sliding.

**Hydraulic Brake Assist(HBA)**

When you press the brake pedal quickly, HBA detects that the vehicle is in emergency condition. It quickly increases the brake pressure to the maximum so that ABS can intervene more quickly and shorten the braking distance effectively.

**Controller Deceleration Parking(CDP)***

When the EPB switch is pulled up, CDP starts to work and the vehicle brakes at a constant deceleration (the deceleration is 0.4g if only the EPB switch is pulled up and 0.8g if the EPB switch is pulled up and the brake pedal is pressed at the same time) until the vehicle comes to a stop. If the driver releases EPB, CDP stops functioning.

**Hill Descent Control(HDC)***

- Working principle: The hill descent control (HDC), an added feature of the ESC system, is designed to improve vehicle comfort. To activate or deactivate the HDC, go to (infotainment system) → ADAS. The main function of HDC is to assist in uphill and downhill slow driving through active braking. When HDC is working, ABS is activated when the wheel slip exceeds the ABS triggering threshold, allowing you to safely and smoothly go downhill, or even reverse.
- Activate HDC:
  - When the vehicle speed is lower than 38 km/h, activate the HDC and state indicator on the instrument cluster stays on.
- HDC speed control:
  - HDC is functional when the vehicle speed is within 11 km/h - 38 km/h. In this case, press/release the accelerator pedal or brake pedal to adjust the speed. The pedal release determines the final speed. The HDC status indicator flashes to indicate that the HDC is working.
- Deactivate HDC:
  - Deactive the HDC, and the indicator on the instrument cluster goes out immediately.
  - HDC also automatically stops when the speed exceeds about 65 km/h.
- HDC malfunction:
  - In some special conditions, such as at a long stretches downhill, the HDC function may be temporarily unavailable due to high brake temperature. You need to drive safely at this point. To restore the function, stop the vehicle until the brake temperature cools down.

ESC operation instructions

- ESC working
  - If there is a risk of skidding or backsliding when the vehicle starts on a slope, or if either drive wheel is spinning, the ESC indicator flashes to indicate that ESC system is working.
- Disabling ESC
  - If the vehicle gets stuck in snow or mud, ESC may reduce the power output from the motor to wheels. Activate the snow mode to get out of the jam.
- Turning off ESC
  - Go to infotainment →ADAS to turn off ESC. ESC also checks its operating status in real time. If ESC OFF switch is pressed while ESC system is working, the system will complete the active intervention control rather than executes the "shutdown" command immediately. ESC is disabled only after the intervention control is complete.
- After ESC is turned off, some of its deactivated functions will be enabled if either the ESC OFF button is pressed again or the vehicle speed exceeds the threshold of 80 km/h. In order to prevent ESC from being turned off suddenly, ESC can be activated again only when it is not in a vehicle dynamic intervention state.
- ESC OFF switch mis-operation
  - ESC is considered to be mis-operated if the ESC OFF switch is pressed and held for more than 10 seconds. In that case, all internal ESC functions continue to work.
- Restarting ESC after the vehicle is powered off
  - When the ESC system has been turned off, restarting the vehicle will automatically restart ESC system.

- The start of ESC is linked with the vehicle speed.
- With ESC turned off, the vehicle can become highly unstable at a speed beyond 80 km/h, so ESC starts automatically in this case.

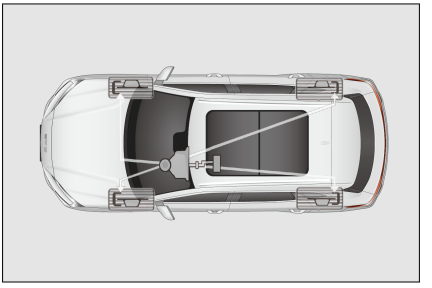
- ESC activated
  - If the ESC fault indicator flashes, be sure to drive carefully, because careless driving may cause an accident. Exercise additional caution when the indicator is flashing.
- When ESC system is disabled
  - Be careful when ESC is disabled, and drive at speeds suitable for road conditions. The ESC system ensures vehicle stability and its driving force. Never turn it off unless necessary.
- Replacing Tyres
  - Make sure all tyres are of the same size, brand, tread pattern, and total load. In addition, be sure to inflate tyres to the recommended pressure.
  - Neither ABS nor ESC will work properly if the vehicle is fitted with different tyres.
  - For details on tyre or wheel replacement, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- Tyre and suspension handling
  - The use of any defective tyre or modified suspension affects the driving safety system and may cause the system to fail.

**Multi-Collision Brake (MCB) Function**

- If an accident requires airbags activation, the vehicle will engage automatic braking.
- Speed reduction, along with intervention by additional driving systems(Electronic Stability Control (ESC), Anti-lock Braking System (ABS), will assist the vehicle to maintain stability and lane position.
- Hazard and brake lights will also light up to alert oncoming traffic andprevent further collisions.
- To support emergency service rescue and vehicle recovery, brakes will release and brake lights will go off after the accident.
- The driver can interrupt the multi-collision braking at any time by accelerating or braking.

**Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)**

- The hydraulic system ofAntilock Braking System (ABS)to drive the brake has two independent circuits. Each circuit passes through the vehicle diagonally (the front left wheel brake is connected with the rear right wheel brake, etc.) and acts. If one circuit fails, two wheels can still be braked. If one circuit fails, two wheels can still be braked.



- ABS helps maintain the steering control by preventing the wheels from locking or skidding when brake is engaged suddenly or on slippery roads.

- When the front tires skid, there is no steering control, which means that the vehicle still moves forward even though the steering wheel is turned. ABS helps to prevent locking and, since rapid pulsating braking is much faster than human reaction, helps to maintain steering control.
- Never pulsate the brake pedal; otherwise, ABS may malfunction. When the steering wheel is turned to avoid danger, keep strong and stable pressure on the brake pedal so that ABS functions.
- When ABS works, noise may be heard. This is normal because the ABS is pulsating the brake quickly.

**CAUTION**

- If the ABS fault warning light is still on while the braking system warning light is on, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- In this case, if brakes are applied, the ABS will not work and the vehicle will become extremely unstable.
- ABS cannot reduce the time and distance required to brake the vehicle. This device only helps you control steering when braking. Please keep an approriate distance from other vehicles.
- ABS cannot prevent skidding caused by sudden direction change, such as trying to make a sharp turn or change lanes suddenly. Always drive carefully at a safe speed, regardless of road and weather conditions.

**CAUTION**

- ABS does not prevent decrease in stability either. When applying the brake in an emergency, the steering should be moderate. A large or sharp turn during the driving can cause the vehicle to swerve into oncoming traffic or run off the road.
- When running on soft or uneven surfaces (such as gravel or snow), a vehicle with ABS may require a longer braking distance than a vehicle without ABS. In such cases, slow down and keep a long distance from other vehicles.

**WARNING**

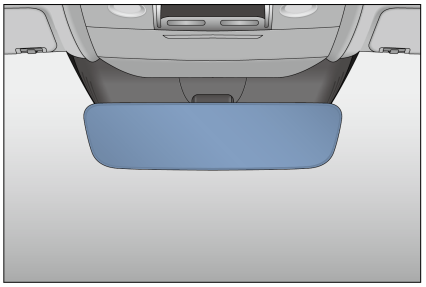
- ABS cannot work effectively under the following conditions:
  - Tyres used do not have a sufficient grip level (e.g., excessively worn tyres are used on snow-covered roads);
  - The vehicle skids when driving at a high speed on slippery roads.
- ABS is not designed to reduce the braking distance of the vehicle. Keep an appropriate distance from the vehicle ahead when:
  - Driving on muddy, sandy or snowy roads;
  - Driving on uneven or pot-holed roads;
  - Bumpy roads.

# Other Main Functions

## Interior Rearview Mirror

**Automatic Anti-Glare***

The automatic anti-glare interior rearview mirror is equipped with electronic anti-glare function, which automatically adjusts the lens colour of the mirror according to the surroundings to reduce the interference of rear glare on the driver's field of vision.

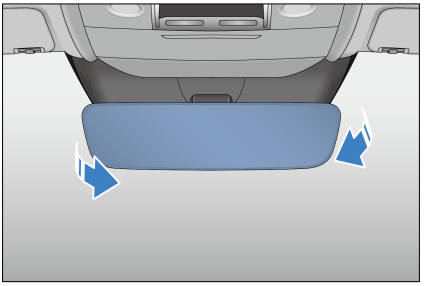


**WARNING**

- Do not hang heavy objects from the interior rearview mirror, or shake or drag it with force.
- When manually adjusting the interior rearview mirror, do not forcibly adjust the stuck mirror to avoid the mirror falling off.
- Do not adjust the interior rearview mirror while driving, as this may obstruct the control of the vehicle, resulting in personal injury or death from accidents.

**Adjusting the Rearview Mirror Manually**

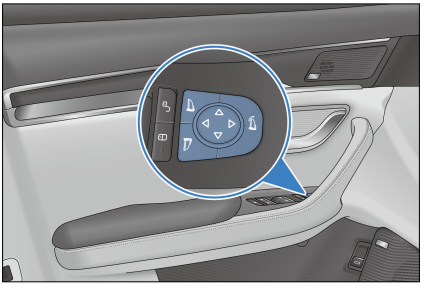
Move the interior rearview mirror up or down, left or right to a suitable position.



## Electric Side Mirrors

The driver can adjust the electric external rearview mirror via its switch to a position where the driver can just see the side of the vehicle in the external rearview mirror.

- Selection switches - used to select the external rearview mirror to be adjusted.
  - : Left external rearview mirror button
  - : Right external rearview mirror button

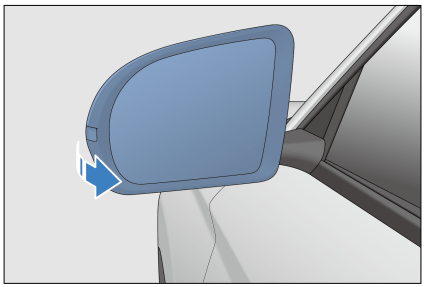


- Adjustment switch - used to adjust the external rearview mirror lens. Press the switch according to the desired direction.

**Folding**

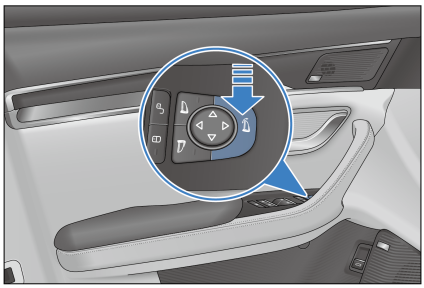
**Manual Folding**

Press the outer edge of the external rearview mirror hard to rotate the mirror body around the folding shaft to the locking position.



**Electric Folding**

- Press the button to fold the external rearview mirror electrically and press it again to unfold it.
- When the anti-theft function is activated, the two external rearview mirrors fold automatically.When the anti-theft function is released, they unfold automatically.



**REMINDER**

- Do not adjust the side mirrors while the vehicle is in motion. This may obstruct the control of the vehicle, resulting in accidents.
- Using the side mirror electric heating defrosting function for a long time may cause the mirror to wear out faster. Turn off the defrost button when it is not needed.

**REMINDER**

## Wiper

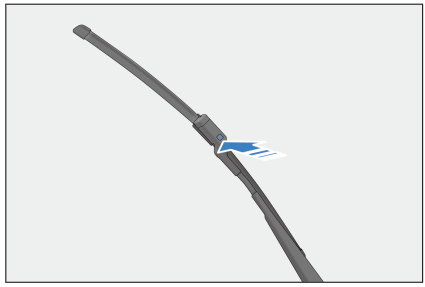
Check the condition of the front and rear wiper blades at least once every six months for cracks or local hardening of the rubber. If any of these are found, the wiper blades should be replaced.

**Replacing Wiper Blades**

**Replacing Front Wiper Blade**

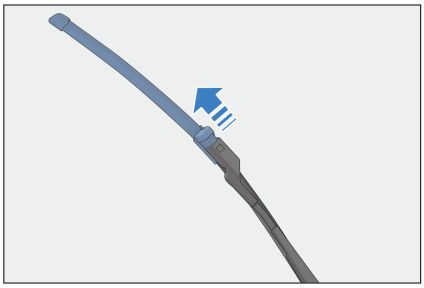
The user can go to infotainment system → Vehicle Health →Overhaul to activate the wiper maintenance function. After the function is activated, the wiper runs to a high position and then stop, so as to facilitate maintenance and replacement of the wiper. After maintenance, the wiper returns to the reset position after the wiper maintenance function is deactivated.

1. Pull up the wiper arm at the driver side, and then pull up the other at the passenger side.
2. Press the wiper lock button.



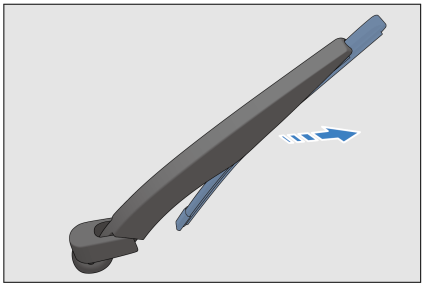
3. Hold the wiper blade and pull it out along the indicated direction.

4. When installing a new wiper blade, follow the reverse procedure.



**Replacing Rear Wiper Blade**

1. Lift the rear wiper arm from the rear windscreen.
2. Hold the wiper arm by hand and pull out the blade vertically, as shown in the figure.
3. When assembling a new wiper blade, operate in the reverse order of removal.



**CAUTION**

- Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are pulled up, as this may damage the bonnet and wiper arms.
- Lower the wipers slowly and avoid direct impact onto the windscreen.

**CAUTION**

- Do not bend the wiper blade, and do not obstruct the wiper blade when the wiper is in operation.

## Snow Chains

**Snow Chain Instructions**

- Snow chains are only used in emergency or when vehicles travel in specific areas specified by laws.
- Snow chains are to be fitted to the front wheels and extra care is required for driving a vehicle fitted with snow chains on icy roads. Some snow chains may damage the tires, wheels, suspension and body of the vehicle.Therefore, thin anti-skid chains should be selected to provide sufficient free space between the tires and other parts in the wheel cover.
- Read the component assembly drawings and other instructions provided by the snow chain manufacturer carefully.
- Consult the BYD authorized dealer or service provider from which you purchase the vehicle before you purchase snow tire chains and install them onto the tires.
- After the snow chains are installed, driving speed should be less than 30 km/h on icy and snowy roads.
- In order to minimize wear of wheels and snow chains, do not travel with snow chains on roads without snow.

**REMINDER**

- Do not drive above 30 km/h or the limit speed specified by the snow

**REMINDER**

chain manufacturer, whichever is lower.

- Drive carefully, paying attention to bumps, potholes, and sharp turns that can cause the vehicle to bounce.
- For vehicles with snow chains, avoid sharp turns or braking with locked wheels, and slow down the vehicle before entering a curve to avoid accidents due to loss of control.
- Tyres snow chains should be used symmetrically and remove immediately when not in use.

# 05 IN-VEHICLE DEVICES

Multimedia System.....188
A/C System.....190
BYD Applications.....197
Storage Device.....199
Other Devices.....201

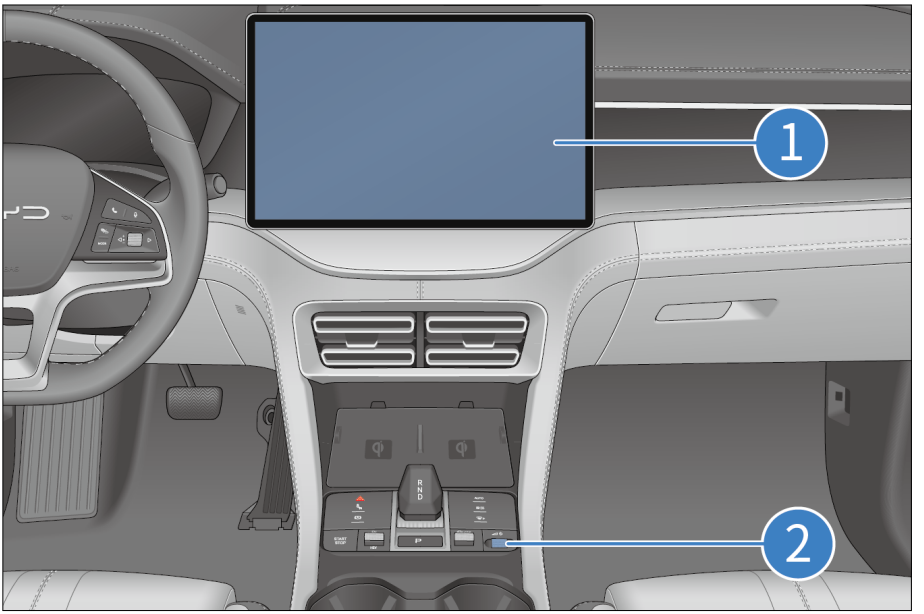
# Multimedia System

## Multimedia Buttons

When the ignition is on, the initial screen is displayed for several seconds and the infotainment system starts to work. To better experience infotainment functions, such as intelligent voice control, apps and video call, the system must be used after network connection.

A warning is displayed when the infotainment system starts for the first time. Tap **Agree** to enter the system.

You can use the customized infotainment touchscreen as needed. A shortcut menu is provided for your convenience, which can include WLAN, Bluetooth, mobile data connection, volume, light mode, and some other vehicle controls.




1 Infotainment display screen

2 Infotainment switch/Scroll button

**Infotainment touchscreen rotation method**

- Clink the screen rotation button on the multimedia touchscreen to automatically adjust the horizontal and vertical screens.

**Factory reset**

- This function factory resets the infotainment system.
- During the process, do not touch any infotainment button or turn off the power supply, or errors may occur.
- The process takes two to five mimutes.

**WARNING**

- To avoid faults in the infotainment system, do not use a high-power inverter on the vehicle.
- Do not format or root the device, as this may cause infotainment system or vehicle malfunction.

**CAUTION**

- To prevent damage to the touchscreen:
  - Touch the screen gently. If there is no response, remove finger from the screen, then touch it again.
  - Clean the screen with a soft damp cloth. Do not use any cleaning product.
- Using the touchscreen
  - When the screen temperature is low, the image displayed may be darker or the system may work slightly slower than normal.
  - The screen may be dark or difficult to see when you are wearing sunglasses. In that case, change the viewing angle or take off the sunglasses.
  - The touchscreen buttons that are grayed out cannot be operated.
- The touchscreen interface shown here is for reference only.
- In driving, please use the infotainment system in landscape mode wherever possible for your safety.

**REMINDER**

- To better use related features (such as smart voice, App and video call) of the infotainment system, it is recommended to have the internet connected.

### Widgets

- When the infotainment system is started, the widget screen is automatically displayed, mainly containing top status bar, vehicle settings, A/C, navigation bar, and widget window.
- As shown:




The widget screen contains three small customizable windows:

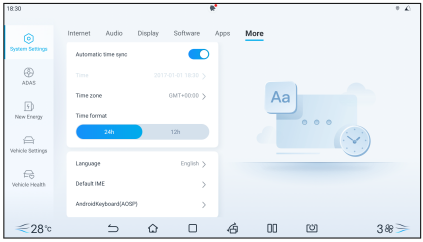
1. Adding a widget: Touch and hold the widget icon you want to replace to make it editable. The widget icon you can add is displayed at the bottom of the screen. Drag the intended widget icon to the desired position and release it.
2. Deleting a widget: Touch and hold the widget icon you want to delete, drag it to the delete icon at the top of the page, then release it.
3. Changing widget position: Touch and hold a widget icon, drag it to the position of another widget, and then release it.

Shortcut: Slide down the top status bar. The shortcut page is displayed,

including shortcuts to WiFi, Mobile data, Bluetooth, Mute, Hotspot, Screenshot, Remote location, Brightness and other vehicle controls.

**Language Setting**

- When the vehicle is powered on, set the language as Simplified Chinese or English in infotainment touchscreen → → **System Settings** → **More**→ **Language**.




**BYD Assistant**

BYD Assistant is an intelligent voice assistant that responds to your voice commands, such as requesting navigation, playing music/radio/DAB, making a phone call, and controlling in-vehicle devices.

- Waking up BYD Assistant:
  - On the steering wheel, press the button.
  - On the infotainment touchscreen, tap .
  - Say the wake word: "Hi, BYD."
- Your voice commands can be recognised after system wake-up.
- Make a request as you like.
  - For example, "Go home" (shortcut locations set), "Play music", "Start DAB+", "Make a call" (contacts data and Bluetooth connection required), "Set the temperature to 23 °C", or "Turn on the seat ventilation for the driver". BYD Assistant performs the recognized instruction.

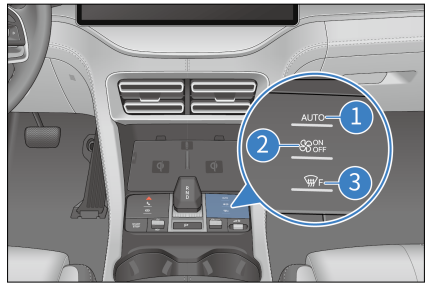
# A/C System

## A/C Button

①Automatic A/C button

②A/C button

③Defrosting button for front windshield




**REMINDER**

- Remote A/C activation:
  - The user can turn on the A/C through the remote control key or BYD APP to gain a comfortable interior environment in advance.

# A/C Operation Interface




| | |
|---|---|
| 1 | A/C Settings |
| 2 | Air purification interface |
| 3 | Seat vent/heating |
| 4 | A/C Operation Interface |
| 5 | A/C button |
| 6 | Automatic A/C button |
| 7 | Cooling |
| 8 | Maximum Cooling |
| 9 | Dual-zone control |
| 10 | Defrosting button for front windshield |
| 11 | Rear windshield defroster |
| 12 | Recirculation/Fresh air |
| 13 | Ventilation |
| 14 | Blowing Mode |
| 15 | Blower speed adjustment |
| 16 | Driver climate control |
| 17 | Front passenger climate control |

**REMINDER**

- Odor of A/C:
  - When the A/C is just turned on, the air from the A/C may have a moist and mildewy odor, which is normal. During the operation of the A/C, the evaporator is

**REMINDER**

easy to be attached by the A/C condensate, and the wet evaporator tends to adsorb unfiltered human perspiration, dust, etc. If the condensed water on the evaporator does not dry, the dark and humid evaporator

**REMINDER**

surface tends to breed mold, which tends to produce a peculiar smell after long-term fermentation.

- Methods to prevent odor:
  - Turn off the cold air and ventilate the vehicle to keep it relatively dry before parking.
  - Check, clean or replace the filter screen regularly.
  - Keep the compartment as clean and fresh as possible.
- If any odor still exists after implementing the above methods, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.
- In order to keep the internal working environment of A/C system dry, the A/C blower may automatically start for a while after the vehicle is powered off and locked. It dries the condensed water generated on the evaporator surface when the A/C is turned on, so as to prevent mold breeding on the evaporator surface. Therefore, the A/C blower automatically starts upon locking in some cases.

## Function Definition

**Automatic A/C button**

- Tap this button, and then the button lights up (the automatic A/C button indicator on the gearshift lever panel lights up), and the compressor state, blower speed, and vent mode are automatically adjusted.
- Features remain in the automatic mode until other operation is performed. If the blower speed, vent mode or compressor state is manually set, the full-automatic control is disabled.

**A/C button**

- To turn off the A/C, tap this A/C button.

**Seat vent/heating**

- Tap this button to enable the seat ventilation and heating function. See the Heating and ventilation system* in chapter 3 - Operation of Controller for specific operation methods.

**Blower Speed Adjustment**

- Tap this button to adjust the blower speed to an appropriate level. The higher the level is, the greater the blower speed is.

**Defrosting button for front windshield**

- Tap this button to switch the A/C to the front defrosting control mode, and the air mainly flows to the front windshield and side windows. Tap this button again to exit the front defrosting control mode.
- Tap this button to turn on the defroster, defogger, and A/C. That is, the A/C is turned on regardless of whether the compressor control button is operated.

**Climate control**

- Driver climate control
  - In independent mode: used for climate control of the driver side.
  - In associated mode: used for climate control of the driver side and the front passenger side.
  - To increase the temperature, tap the upper arrow on the touchscreen or tap the temperature display area and then slide downward. To decrease

the temperature, tap the lower arrow on the touchscreen or tap the temperature display area and then slide upward.

- When it is adjusted to the coldest position, "LO" is displayed. When it is adjusted to the hottest position, "HI" is displayed.

- Front passenger climate control
  - In independent mode: used for climate control of the front passenger side.
  - In associated mode: adjust the front passenger side temperature and exit the associated mode to enter the independent mode.
  - To increase the temperature, tap the upper arrow on the touchscreen or tap the temperature display area and then slide downward. To decrease the temperature, tap the lower arrow on the touchscreen or tap the temperature display area and then slide upward.
  - When it is adjusted to the coldest position, "LO" is displayed. When it is adjusted to the hottest position, "HI" is displayed.

**Dual-zone control**

- Tap this button to switch from independent mode to associated mode.
  - Independent mode: The temperatures on the driver's side and the front passenger's side can be set separately. After this mode is selected, the button icon lights up.
  - Associated mode: The temperatures on the driver's side and the front passenger's side can be adjusted simultaneously through the driver climate control button. In association mode, the button icon is gray.
  - In association mode, operating the front passenger climate control automatically switches to the independent mode.

**Maximum Cooling**

- Tap this button to switch the A/C to the maximum cooling control mode. The compressor is turned on, the temperature is adjusted to LO, the blower speed is adjusted to the maximum, the recirculation mode is activated, and air blows in face level mode.
- Tap this button again to exit the maximum cooling control mode.

**Cooling**

Tap this button to turn on the A/C. At this time, the icon lights up and the compressor starts to work. Tap this button again to turn off the A/C compressor. At this time, the icon goes out and the compressor stops working.

**Recirculation/Fresh air**

- Tap this button to switch the air inlet mode to recirculation, and the icon  is displayed. Tap this button again to switch the air inlet mode to fresh air, and the icon  is displayed.
- When the Auto air recirculation when parking is enabled, the vehicle switches to the recirculation mode automatically during parking to ensure the air quality in the vehicle and avoid the exhaust from entering the vehicle.

**Rear windshield defroster**

- Tap this button to activate the rear windshield defroster and the external rearview mirror defroster. If there is no other operation, they are automatically deactivated after operating for 15 min. Tap this button again to turn off the rear windshield

defroster and the external rearview mirror defroster.

- This function cannot be used to dry rain drops and melt snow.

**WARNING**

- Do not touch the external rearview mirror surface after turning on the rear windshield defroster switch because its surface becomes hot.

**CAUTION**

- When cleaning the inner side of the rear windshield, be careful not to scratch or damage the heating wire or connector.

**Ventilation**

- Tap this button to switch A/C to the ventilation control mode, with natural wind blown out.
- Tap this button again to exit the ventilation control mode and switch to the automatic mode.

**Blowing Mode**

Tap an icon on the infotainment system screen to select the corresponding blowing mode. Blowing modes can be freely selected on the infotainment system screen, and up to three blowing modes can be activated at the same time as required.

➡ : Air is blown onto the driver's and passengers' upper bodies.

⬇ : Air is blown onto the driver's and passengers' feet.

: Air is blown onto the front windshield and side windows.



**Precautions for Operation**

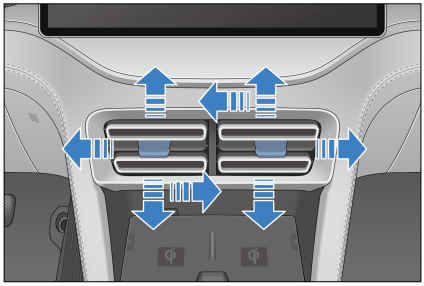
- To quickly cool down the vehicle parked under the burning sun, open the window and drive for several minutes. In this way, the hot air can be discharged to facilitate the A/C to cool down the vehicle.
- To cool down quickly, adjust the temperature to "LO" and keep the setting in recirculation mode for several minutes.
- Make sure that the air inlet grille in front of the front windshield is not blocked (by such things as leaves or snow).
- In wet weather, do not let cold air blow onto the windshield. The temperature difference between the inside and outside of the windshield causes fogging windshield.
- Keep the space under the front seats unoccupied so that the air in the vehicle can be fully circulated.
- In cold weather, the fan speed is recommended to be set to a high speed for one minute to remove snow or moisture from the intake channel, so as to reduce fogging of the window.
- In cold weather, keep the setting in recirculation mode for several minutes for rapid heating. To prevent the windows from fogging up, switch to fresh air mode after the temperature in the compartment rises.

- Close all windows when following other vehicles on a dusty road or driving in windy and dusty conditions. Set the air inlet mode to recirculation, and turn on the A/C fan.
- When heating, press the compressor control icon to light it up (the compressor is turned on), reducing the moisture in the airflow.
- In ventilation mode, the system introduces the natural wind outside the vehicle, so it is suitable for spring and autumn.

## Vents

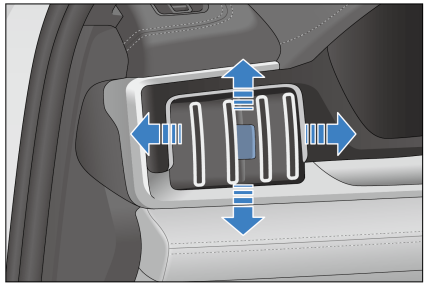
**Front Center Vent**

The venting angle or blower speed can be adjusted by toggling adjusting sheets in the center of vents, and vents can be closed by toggling adjusting sheets left and right to the limit.



**Front side vent**

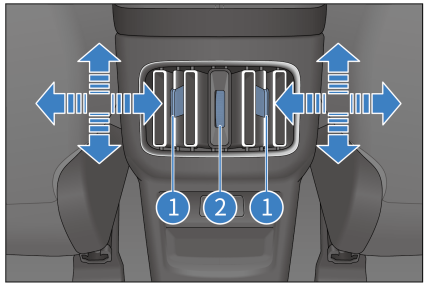
The venting angle or blower speed can be adjusted by toggling adjusting sheets in the left/right vent, and vents can be closed by toggling adjusting sheets up and down to the limit.



**Rear vent**

①The venting angle can be adjusted by toggling adjusting sheets in the vents.

②The vents can be adjusted or turned on/off by toggling the roller.



# Air Purification System*

The air purification system purifies airborne PM2.5 particles. When A/C is turned on, the system thoroughly removes PM2.5 particles from the air blown into the cabin.

**Air purification operation interface**

Tap "Air purification" on the touchscreen.




①Air purification interface

②PM2.5 Detection Button

③Quick Purification Button

④Outside PM2.5 Value Display

⑤In-Vehicle PM2.5 Value Display

**PM2.5 detection**

- Tap this button to detect the PM2.5 value of interior and exterior air. The detection values and levels are displayed on the PAD in real time.
- Tap this button again to turn off the air quality detection function.

**Quick purification**

- Activates or
- Tap it a second time to end fast purification.

**In-Vehicle PM2.5 Value Display**

- Tap this icon to display the interior air PM2.5 value and level.

**REMINDER**

- The PM2.5 value detected by the on-board air purification (PM2.5) detector is the PM2.5 value in the air near the vehicle carrying the device in a short time, which should be different from the daily or real-time PM2.5 value declared by national and relevant government authorities.

**REMINDER**

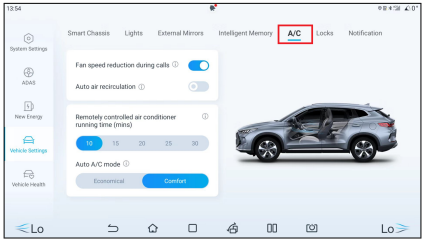
- Reduce the frequency of PM2.5 detection in the following environments:
  - Sandstorms and other such extremely harsh environments.
  - Cold regions (ambient temperature <-20°C)
  - High humidity environments (relative humidity >90%);
  - Environments with a change in temperature (prone to condensation), such as driving in from a cold environment to a high-temperature indoor environment or car park.
- Running maximum air flow speed in internal circulation mode can quickly reduce the concentration of fine particles in the air inside the vehicle.

**Outside PM2.5 Value Display**

- Tap this icon to display the exterior air PM2.5 value and level.

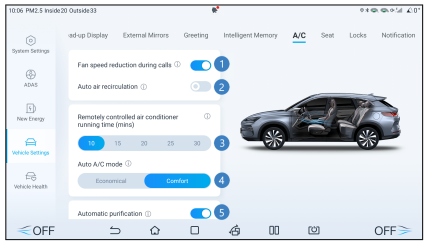
## A/C Settings

- Press this button to display A/C Settings screen.
- Tap it again to exit A/C Settings screen.




① **Fan speed reduction during calls**

Tap this icon to enable the Fan speed reduction during calls.




② **Auto air recirculation when parking**

Tap this button to enable this setting.

Tap this button a second time to disable it.

③ **Remotely controlled air conditioner running time**

Tap this button to set the time for remote A/C running.

④ **Auto A/C Mode**

Two options are available: Economical and Comfort.

⑤ **Automatic purification***

- Tap this button to enable auto purification function.
- Tap this button a second time to disable it.

# BYD Applications

## About BYD App

**About BYD App**

- BYD app is a mobile application of Internet of Vehicle (IoV) developed by BYD independently. It allows you to control the vehicle remotely and check vehicle conditions, delivering cloud era experience of IoV.

- Search for "BYD" in Google Play or App Store to download and install BYD app.




## Account Registration

After downloading and installing the BYD App, register and log in to your account through the mobile guide by following the steps below.

1. After starting the APP, click "Register" to enter the "Register" page.
2. Enter email address registered in BYD authorized dealer, tap "Send email" to receive verification code, and then enter the code in app.
3. Set your password in password setting screen to complete the registration, and then the homepage is displayed.

**CAUTION**

- Provide the email address registered at the BYD authorized dealer, or registration will fail.
- In the app, select a country or region on upper right corner of the screen. The default setting depends on your phone setting. If it is not where you make the purchase, choose the right one, otherwise your data will not be accessible.

## Vehicle Condition and Control

### Vehicle Condition and Control

The BYD app homepage provides information and control items of the vehicle.

1. The homepage shows remaining driving range, SOC, vehicle error information, and status of vehicle driving, charging, A/C system, seat heater, and tire pressure.
2. Tap lock, unlock, light flashing & honking, or light flashing button to activate the corresponding function.
3. Turn on or off A/C on the app homepage, or tap the A/C card to access other settings, such as temperature regulation, see A/C Operation Interface for details.
4. At the bottom of the homepage, tap the icon of seats, doors and windows, or tires to go to the associated screen and check their status.
5. If you have multiple vehicles on an account, tap the vehicle name in the upper left corner of the screen to switch between vehicles.

**CAUTION**

- The control function of the app is mainly for remote use. To use this function, ensure your phone and vehicle are connected to the Internet.

## Individual Center and Vehicle Management

**Individual Center and Vehicle Management**

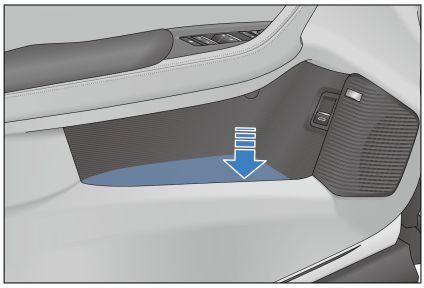
Tap the icon on the upper right corner to go to the individual center.

- **Vehicle management**: changes vehicle name and license plate number.
- **Account and security**: recovers or changes your password.
- **Settings**: sets message reception, automatic login, and other items.
- **About**: includes privacy policy and information to contact us and give feedback.

# Storage Device

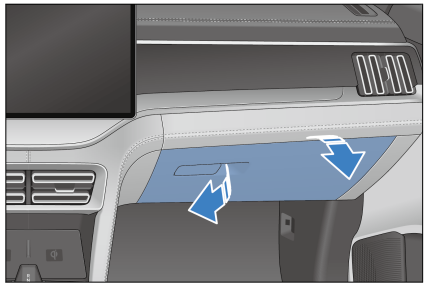
## Door Bins

Each door is equipped with a door bin to store beverage bottles or small items.



## Glove Box

- Pull the handle to open the glovebox. The light in the glovebox goes on when it is opened.
- Push the glovebox up to close. The light in the glovebox goes off when it is closed.

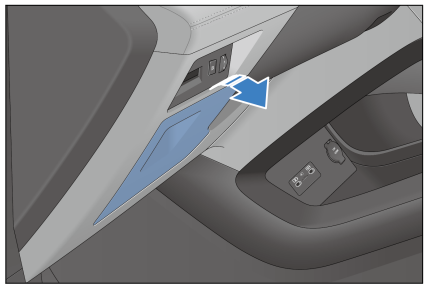


**CAUTION**

- To reduce risk of injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking, keep the center console cubby closed while driving.

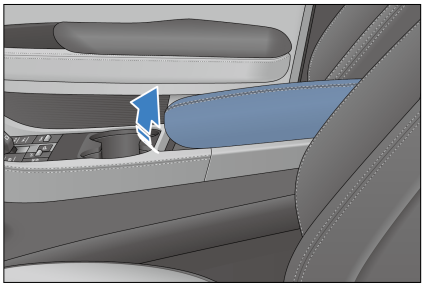
## Bill Box

- Pull the handle on the driver's side glovebox to open it.
- Invoices, business cards, or similar items can be put in the driver's side glovebox. Do not put in large or heavy objects, so as not to close the driver's side glovebox. Please keep the driver's side glovebox closed during driving.



## Central Armrest Box

- Pull up the centre console cubby cover as the figure shows.
- Press the centre console cubby cover downward to close it.



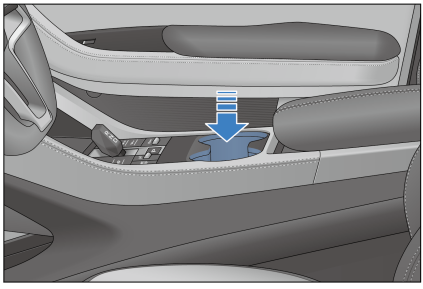
**REMINDER**

- To reduce risk of injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking, keep the centre console cubby closed while driving.

## Cup Holder

**Front seat cup holder**

The front seat cup holder is located in the center console.



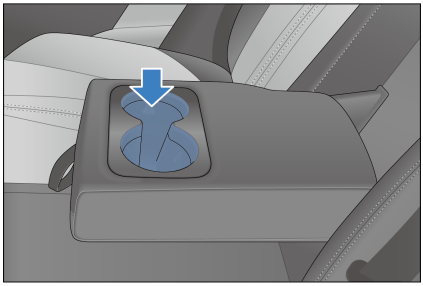
**CAUTION**

Do not place an open cup or untightened beverage bottle in the cup holder, so as to avoid liquid spillage when you are opening and closing the doors and driving.

- Do not place an open cup or untightened beverage bottle in the cup holder, so as to avoid liquid spillage when you are opening and closing the doors and driving.
- To ensure safe driving, the driver is strictly prohibited from taking the cup out or placing it in the cup holder while driving.

**Rear Seat Cup Holder**

Pull down the rear armrest to use the rear seat cup holder located on it.



**CAUTION**

- When using the cup holder, do not start or brake the vehicle suddenly to prevent liquid spillage and burn you or other passengers.
- To prevent liquid splashing during door opening/closing or driving, please do not place open cups or untight beverage bottles in the cup holder.
- To ensure safe driving, the driver is strictly prohibited from taking

**CAUTION**

the cup out or placing it in the cup holder while driving.

## File Pockets

- There are seatback pockets at the back of the front seats for storing magazines, newspapers, or similar objects.



## Glasses Case

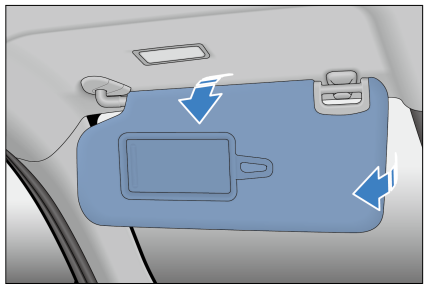
- Press the glasses case cover to open it.



# Other Devices

## Sun Visor

- To block sunlight from the front, pull the sun visor down.
- To block sunlight from a side, remove the swivel sleeve from the fixed support and turn the visor towards the side window.

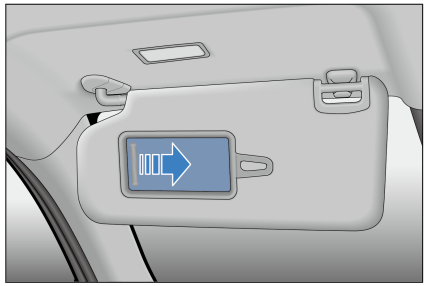


**REMINDER**

- Correct use of the sun visor improves driving safety and comfort.

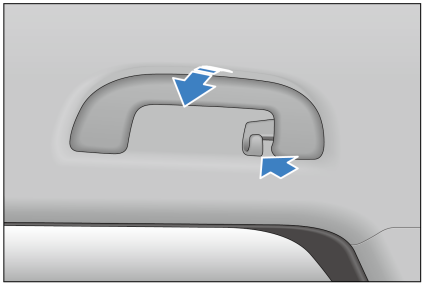
## Vanity Mirror*

- Vanity mirrors are installed on the driver's and front passenger's sun visors.
- To access the vanity mirror, pull the sun visor down and flip open the mirror cover. The vanity mirror indicator lights up. The indicator goes out when you close the mirror cover or fold up the sun visor.



## Grab Handles

- Pull the grab handle down for use. The handle returns to its original position when released.
- Beside the safety handle is the clothes hook to hang clothes and hats.

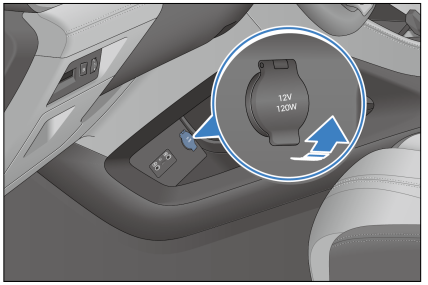


**CAUTION**

- Do not hang heavy objects on safety handles to avoid personal injury or damage to the safety handles.

## 12 V Auxiliary power

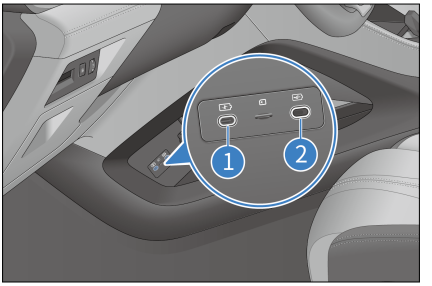
- It is used for accessories with 12V DC working voltage and no more than 10A working current.
- Open the cover of the 12 V backup power to use it when the vehicle is powered on.




## Front-Row USB Ports

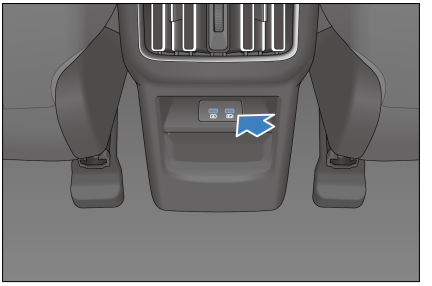
①USB charging port

②USB data transmission port



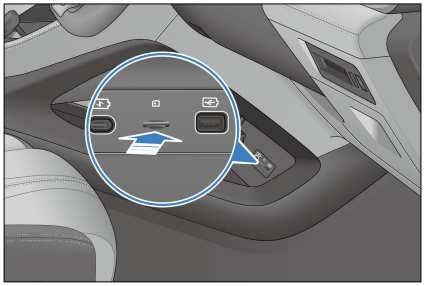

## Rear Charging port

Rear charging ports can only be used for charging and cannot be connected to the infotainment system.



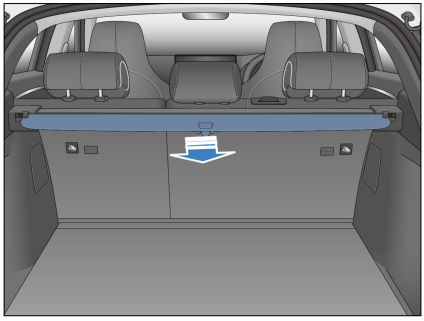
## SD Card Slot*

An SD card slot is provided at the hollow part close to the driver's side under the auxiliary dashboard.



## Shade Curtain

- The cargo cover is used for privacy and direct sunlight protection.
- Lay down the seat, place one side of the cargo cover into the groove of the C-pillar lower shield, then press it to the bottom, and insert it into the groove of the C-pillar lower shield on the other side from above the seat lock ring. Pull out the curtain and hang it in the grooves on both sides in the rear.



- Do the reverse to remove the cover.

**WARNING**

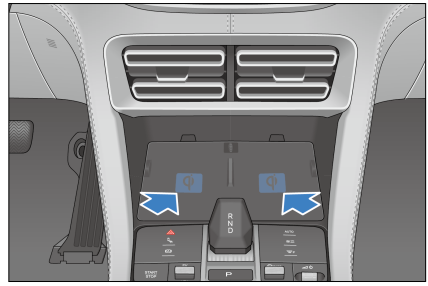
- When installing the cargo cover, make sure that it is installed securely.
- Do not place any objects on the cargo cover.
- Never allow a child to climb onto the cargo cover, otherwise,

**WARNING**

damage to the cargo cover, or even injury/death to the child, can happen.

## Smartphone Wireless Charging Position*

- The smartphone wireless charging area is located in the center console. The user can slide down the status bar on the top of the infotainment touchscreen to open the Quick interface and turn on or off the smartphone wireless charging function. The system is turned on by default. After the vehicle is started, place the smartphone on the anti-skid rubber pad in the wireless charging area, with the smartphone screen facing upwards, and the smartphone is automatically switched to the wireless charging mode. The charging icon is displayed on the infotainment UI interface.
  -  The green icon in the cellphone flashes dynamically during charging.
  -  Charging fault: The icon flashes.



**REMINDER**

- The smartphone wireless charging setting icon can be added or deleted in the edit bar on the Quick interface of the Infotainment System.
- The wireless phone charger function is not compatible with all smartphones, and only applies to QI-certified phones.
- Do not place any foreign objects in the charging area during program upgrading.
- Two phones can be charged at the same time.
- Thick phone shells may prevent charging.
- On bumpy roads, the wireless phone charging may intermittently stop and then resume.
- If the smartphone deviates from the wireless charging area and stops charging, move the smartphone back to the wireless charging area.
- If the phone cannot be charged properly, ensure that there are no foreign objects in the wireless charger area, or wait for the wireless charger area to cool down before trying again. If it is still impossible to charge the phone, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

**CAUTION**

- Ensure your smart key is more than 10 in (25 cm) away from the wireless charger area when the wireless charger system is working.

**CAUTION**

- To avoid wireless charger dysfunction or even accidents, do not place coins, metal keys, metal rings, or other articles containing metal in the wireless charger area together with the phone.
- Do not place heavy objects on the charging area to avoid any damage.
- If the phone wireless charger system is faulty and does not work properly, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- BYD will not assume any responsibility for any problems caused by improper use. If the product is disassembled or modified, the free warranty will be terminated.
- For safety reasons, do not leave an unattended phone being charged in the vehicle.
- For safety reasons, refrain from checking phone charging status while driving.
- If a metal item is found between the device and the charger rubber pad during charging, do not remove the metal item with bare hands to prevent burning.
- For better charging, place the smartphone in the centre (where the "Charging Area" is shown).
- Prevent any fluid from coming into contact with the charger area. The wireless charger will malfunction if water enters the wireless charger via the gap around the rubber mat.

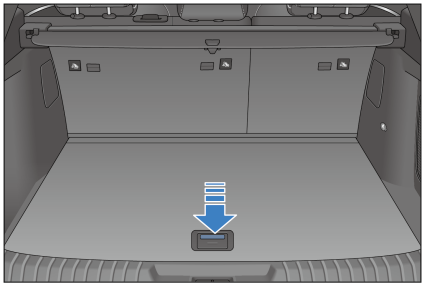
**CAUTION**

- Charging may stop at high temperatures, and will resume once the temperature drops.
- BYD makes no commitments for problems caused by external wireless charging coils. Please use with caution.

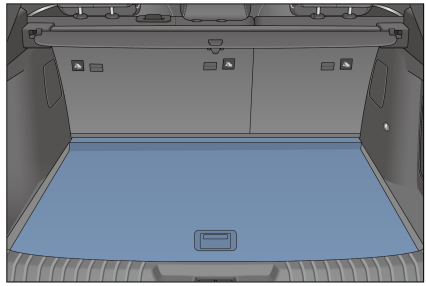
## Trunk Lid

The boot cover board can be installed at two different heights. Press the handle on the cover board to remove it and adjust height.

1. When installed at the upper height position, the boot cover board is flush with the top surface of the support plate. When the rear seats are laid down, the boot cover board is flatly fitted with the back of the seats.



2. When installed at the lower height position, the boot cover board is stuck on the lower step surface of the support plate, and the storage space can be enlarged.



## Emergency hammer

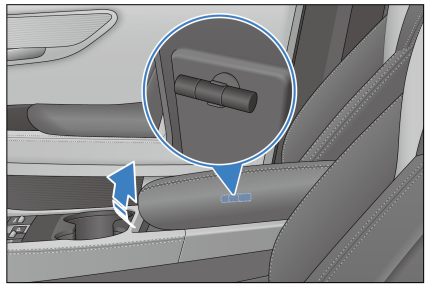
The safety hammer is located in the centre stowage compartment.

The tool is to be used on side door glass only.

It is to be only used in case of emergency exit from the vehicle.

**How to Use**

1. Open the centre stowage compartment to reveal the safety hammer fixed to the right wall of thecentre stowage compartment.
2. Remove the hammer from the stowage compartment.
3. Remove any cover of the hammer end.



4. Hold the handle firmly, hold the hammer end against the glass, push against the glass to activate the spring release.

**WARNING**

- If the side door glass is laminated, it may not shatter and may remain in position.
- Once the glass is fractured and weakened, use appropriate method to push the fractured glass out of the door aperture.
- Take all necessary precautions to not be injured by any broken glass.

# 06 MAINTENANCE

Maintenance Information..... 208
Regular Maintenance.....211
Self-Maintenance.....215

# Maintenance Information

## Maintenance Cycle and Items

**Vehicle Maintenance Plan**

- Maintenance plan aims to ensure driving stability, safety and economy, reducing the occurrence of faults.
- For the planned maintenance interval, refer to the maintenance schedule depending on the reading of the odometer or the time interval, whichever comes first.
- Overdue maintenance items should also be implemented at the same intervals.
- Rubber hoses (for cooling and heating systems, braking systems, etc.) should be checked by professional technicians according to the maintenance schedule.
- These are particularly important maintenance items, and the maintenance intervals of each item are recorded in the maintenance schedule. The hose with any deterioration or damage should be replaced immediately.
- The maintenance schedule lists all maintenance items necessary to keep your vehicle in the best operating condition.

**Maintenance Plan Requirements**

The vehicle must be maintained according to a maintenance schedule.

If the vehicle is operated mainly under one or more of the following special conditions, some maintenance schedule items need to be carried out more frequently.

- Road conditions
  - Driving on rough, muddy or snowy roads.
  - Driving on dusty roads.
- Driving conditions
  - The vehicle is used to tow a camping trailer or a roof bracket is installed on the vehicle.
  - The vehicle is driven within 8 km repeatedly and driven in an environment with temperature below zero.
  - The vehicle is driven in long-term idling or low-speed long-distance driving conditions. The examples include police cars, taxis, or vehicles carrying goods.

**Maintenance Schedule**

**Vehicle Maintenance**

The basic maintenance of the vehicle is carried out in accordance with the following maintenance time and maintenance mileage (total mileage), whichever comes first.

| Maintenance item | Time and mileage interval for maintenance |
|---|---|
| Check whether the cooling water pipe is intact and tightly locked at the connecting parts | Check them every 12 months or 15,000 km. |
| Check brake pads and discs | Check them every 24 months or 30,000 km. |

| Maintenance item | Time and mileage interval for maintenance |
|---|---|
| Check brake system pipeline and hoses | Check them every 24 months or 30,000 km. |
| Check steering wheel and lever | Check them every 24 months or 30,000 km. |
| Check drive shaft dust cover | Check them every 24 months or 30,000 km. |
| Check ball pin and dust cover | Check them every 24 months or 30,000 km. |
| Check front and rear suspension | Check them every 24 months or 30,000 km. |
| Check the tire wear (if the tire eccentric wear is greater than 2mm, check the front and rear wheel alignment) | Check during maintenance, and carry out tire transposition if necessary; In bad working conditions, increase the frequency of inspection, and carry out tire transposition if necessary. |
| Check the coolant level in the expansion tank. | Check them every 24 months or 30,000 km. |
| Check brake fluid | Check them every 24 months or 30,000 km. |
| Check high-voltage battery tray, anti-collision bar, protection board, anti-collision valve, insulation foam and mounting torque. | Check them every 24 months or 30,000 km. |
| Check the A/C strainer and filter * | Check them every 24 months or 30,000 km. In case of harsh environment or reduced air outlet, it is recommended to check in time and replace the air conditioning filter if necessary. |
| Check whether there is air leakage at the exhaust pipe connector | Check them every 24 months or 30,000 km. |
| Check fuel filler cap, fuel pipe and connector | Check them every 24 months or 30,000 km. |
| Replace the coolant of power battery* | Replace the long-acting organic acid coolant every six years or 90,000 km, whichever comes first. |
| Replace engine coolant and drive motor coolant | Replace the long-acting organic acid coolant every six years or 90,000 km, whichever comes first. |
| Replace brake fluid | Replace it every 2 years or 30,000 km, and check it during routine maintenance. |
| Check and replace EHS special gear oil | Check the amount of EHS gear oil during routine maintenance. Replace it every 4 years |

| Maintenance item | Time and mileage interval for maintenance |
|---|---|
| | or 60,000 km and replace filter element assembly together. |
| Replace engine oil and oil filter | Check them every 12 months or 15,000 km. |
| Spark plug | Check it every 45,000 km. |
| Fuel filter | Check them every 24 months or 30,000 km. |
| Replace air filter element | In general driving conditions: Replace every 12 months or 15,000 km; check under severe service conditions, and replace if necessary. |
| Replace charcoal canister dust filter | Replace every 2 years or 30,000 km, or upon frequent automatic fuel gun stopping during refueling. |

**REMINDER**

- In order to keep the power battery in the best condition, it is necessary to fully charge and release the vehicle regularly (at least every 6 months or 72000 km) to achieve the purpose of battery self-calibration. You can also contact BYD authorized service store for capacity testing and calibration.
- Under the following circumstances, your car is in severe working conditions. In order to protect your car, it is recommended that you shorten the maintenance mileage on the basis of the regular maintenance interval mileage according to the actual situation: long-term use in low temperature environment (ambient temperature < 5 °C). And when it is in the HEV mode, each continuous driving time is too short (< 15min) or the vehicle is often in the slow creeping (vehicle speed is less than 10 km/h) working condition for a long time.

**REMINDER**

- For vehicles with accidents or abnormal suspension, it is necessary to check whether the high-voltage wiring harness connector of the battery pack is loose. And the after-sales department shall issue a technical notice to the vehicle-selling store.

**Remarks:**

- The maintenance period in the table is calculated from the purchase date.
- To keep the vehicle in the optimum state, please operate the vehicle correctly according to the following instructions.
  - Before the first maintenance, the use ratio of HEV mode should not be less than 50% during running-in in ECO mode.
  - After the first maintenance, the use ratio of HEV mode should not be less than 10%.

The replacement time of the oil filter can be shortened according to the degree of fouling the gasoline engine.

# Regular Maintenance

## Regular Maintenance

- Be sure to maintain the vehicle as per the maintenance timetable to allow it serve in the best working efficiency and reduce fault occurrence.
- Drivers can refer to the maintenance plan for scheduled maintenance intervals, depending on the milometer reading or time interval, whichever comes first.
- For overdue maintenance items, the same time interval should be used for maintenance.
- The maintenance shall be carried out by a local BYD authorized dealer or service provider in accordance with the corresponding standards and specifications.
- The maintenance timetable lists the maintenance items and travel time or distance based on the assumption that the vehicle is used as a normal means of transportation to carry passengers and goods that do not exceed the vehicle load limit.

**CAUTION**

- Please maintain the vehicle regularly according to the requirements in the Warranty and Maintenance Service Manual of BYD.

## Vehicle Corrosion Prevention

**The most common causes of vehicle corrosion are:**

- The underbody of the vehicle is covered in salt, dust or moisture.
- The vehicle or some of its parts are exposed to high humidity and high temperature for a long time.
- The paint layer or underlayer is scratched by minor collision or by stones and gravel.

**The following rules should be observed to prevent vehicle corrosion:**

- Wash the vehicle frequently.
  - If you drive on a saline-alkali road in winter or live in a coastal area, clean the chassis and wheel guard with a high-pressure water gun or steam at least once a month to reduce corrosion. After winter, wash the chassis thoroughly
- Check vehicle paint and trims.
  - Any chip or crack found on the paint must be repaired immediately to prevent corrosion. If fragments or cracks peel off from the metal surface, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for repair.
- Check interior vehicle.
  - Moisture and dust accumulated under the carpet cause corrosion, so the underneath of the carpet should be regularly checked and kept dry.
  - Special care should be taken when the vehicle is transporting chemicals, detergents, fertilisers, salt, and other substances. Such substances should be kept in appropriate containers for transportation. If spillage or leakage is found, clean immediately and keep dry.
- Use fender liners.
  - Fender liners protect vehicles in saline areas or on gravel roads. The

bigger and closer to the ground the fender liner, the better.

- Park in a well-ventilated and dry area.

## Paintwork Maintenance Tips

- Clean the vehicle in time.
- Do not perform secondary painting if there are no obvious scratches on the finish, so as to prevent mismatch or colour incompatibility.
- When the vehicle is not used for a long period, it should be parked in a garage or a well-ventilated place, and special body cover should be used in winter. Choose a shady place for parking temporarily.
- Prevent strong impacts, knocks, or scratches on the paint. If the paint is scratched, dented or if it peels, it should be repaired in time, preferably by professional auto beauty provider.
- Do not touch the paint with a greasy hand or cloth. Do not place greasy tools or rub with organic solvents on the vehicle body so as to avoid chemical reactions.
- Wax the vehicle top coat for protection once a month or when the body surface cannot resist water well, and go to a professional auto detailing shop for maintenance regularly (quarterly) to restore the brightness and luster of the body top coat in time.
- High quality polish and wax must be used. If the body finish is severely weathered, use a car cleaning polish in addition to the wax. Carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions and precautions. Chrome finish should be polished and waxed as well as painted finish.

**CAUTION**

- When the vehicle is repainted and placed in a high-temperature paint waxing workshop, the vehicle's plastic bumper must be removed to avoid damage caused by high temperatures.

## Exterior Cleaning

- The vehicle must be cleaned in time under the following circumstances, which can cause peeling of paint layer or corrosion of the vehicle body and parts:
  - Driving along the coast.
  - Driving on a road with anti-freeze.
  - Driving on roads covered with coal tar.
  - Resin, bird droppings, or insect carcasses are stuck on the vehicle.
  - Driving in areas with a large amount of smoke, soot, dust, iron filings, or chemicals.
  - The vehicle is visibly soiled by dust or mud.
  - After raining.

**Washing Vehicle Manually**

Before washing the vehicle, park it in the shade, and wait for the vehicle to cool down sufficiently.

1. Hose off loose dirt, including all muds or road salts at the bottom of the vehicle and on wheel pits.
2. Wash the vehicle with neutral agents, the mixing of which should be carried out according to the manufacturer's instructions. Soak a soft cloth with cleaning solution and gently wipe it

down along the direction of the water flow. Do not wipe in a circular motion or horizontally.

3. Rinse thoroughly. Otherwise, the washing agent results in stripes after air drying. After washing the vehicle in hot weather, rinse all parts properly.
4. Dry the vehicle with a clean soft towel to prevent stay water marks. In order to prevent scratching, do not rub or apply excessive force on the paint.

**REMINDER**

- Do not use strongly alkaline washing powder, soapy water, detergents, de-waxing detergents, or organic matters (petrol, kerosene, volatile oil, or strong solvent) to clean the vehicle.
- When cleaning the combination lights, do not wipe their surface with chemical solvents such as petrol, alcohol, lacquer thinner, thinner and carbon tetrachloride. Doing so will cause the combination light casings to crack.
- It is recommended that vehicles travelling in coastal or heavily polluted areas be washed once a day.
- Do not use blades or petrol to remove hard dirt from the vehicle body. The plastic wheel trim is easily damaged by organic matter. If any organic matter splashes on the vehicle trim, remove it with water and check whether the trim is damaged. Please replace any seriously damaged plastic wheel trim in time. Otherwise, the trim may fall from the wheel during vehicle movement and cause an accident.

**REMINDER**

- Do not use abrasive cleaning agents to scrub the bumper.
- Clean polished metal parts with carbon cleaner and wax them regularly for protection.

**Automatic Vehicle Washing**

Some types of brushes, unfiltered water, or machine-defined rinse procedures in automatic car wash stations may scratch or damage the paint surface. that may scratch the paint and affect its gloss and durability, especially darker colours. Before washing the vehicle, consulting the staff of the vehicle wash station for the safest wash procedure for the paint surface is a better choice.

## Interior Cleaning

**REMINDER**

- When cleaning the interior or exterior of the vehicle, do not allow water to flow onto the floor and dashboard, as water entering nearby electrical components may cause malfunction.

**Carpet**

- Clean carpets with a good foam detergent.
- Use a vacuum cleaner to remove as much dust as possible. Several types of foam detergents can be used. Some are in spray cans, and the others are powders or liquids, which produce foam when mixed with water. Clean the carpets with foam soaked sponge or a brush, scrubbing in a circular motion.

- Do not use plain water, and keep the carpets as dry as possible.

**Seat Belts**

- The seat belts can be cleaned with neutral soapy water or lukewarm water.
- Scrub the seat belts with a sponge or soft cloth. Check the seat belts for excessive wear, tears or cut marks.

**CAUTION**

- Do not clean the seat belt with colourant or bleach. These substances may decrease the seat belt’ s strength.
- Do not use any seat belt that is not dry.

**Doors and Windows**

- Doors and windows can be cleaned with any ordinary detergent.
- Gently wipe the inner side of the rear windscreen along the left and right directions. Excessive force or wiping up and down may damage the heating wires of the rear defroster and aerial conductor.
- Check the door brake regularly. If obvious dust accumulation is found on the brake rod, wipe it with a wet soft cloth to remove dust on the surface, and then apply 0.3~0.8 g grease between the bracket and the rod riveted shaft, and between the rod and the sliding block.

**CAUTION**

- When cleaning the inside of the rear windows, take care not to

**CAUTION**

scratch or damage electric heating wires or junctions.

**A/C Control Panel, Car Speakers, Dashboard, Control Panel and Switches**

- Clean the A/C control panel, car speakers, dashboard, control panel and switches with a wet soft cloth.
- Wipe dust off gently with a clean soft cloth soaked in lukewarm water.

**CAUTION**

- Do not use any organic matter (such as solvents, kerosene, alcohol, petrol) or acid-base solutions. These chemicals can cause discolouration, staining, or flaking.
- Please confirm that the detergent or polishing agent to be used does not contain the above substances.
- If a new liquid washing agent is used, do not splash it onto the interior surface of the vehicle, because it may contain the above substances. Clear any splashed liquid quickly.

**Leather**

- Leather trimmings can be cleaned with a neutral detergent for woolen.
- Use a soft cloth soaked with a neutral detergent solution to wipe off the dust, and then use a clean wet cloth to wipe off the residual detergent thoroughly.
- If leather gets wet, wipe it with a clean soft cloth. Dry the leather in a well-ventilated, cool place.

- For any questions about vehicle cleaning, please consult a local BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

**CAUTION**

- If dirt cannot be cleaned off using a neutral detergent, clean it with a detergent that does not contain organic solvents.
- Do not clean leather with any organic material such as volatile oil, alcohol, petrol, acid or alkali, as these will cause discolouration.
- Do not clean leather with a nylon brush or synthetic fiber cloth, as these may scratch the fine patterns on the leather surface.
- Mold may grow on dirty leather trimmings. Special care must be taken to avoid oil stains and trimmings must always be kept clean.
- Prolonged exposure to sunlight will cause leather to harden or shrink, so the vehicle should be parked in a shady and cool place, especially in the summer.
- In hot weather, avoid placing vinyl or waxy items on the trimmings, as these may stick to leather in high temperatures.
- Improper cleaning of leather trimmings may cause discolouration or spots.

# Self-Maintenance

## Self-Maintenance

**Precautions for selfmaintenance**

- If you want to carry out maintenance by yourself, make sure to correctly follow the steps specified in this chapter.
- It should be noted that incorrect and incomplete maintenance will affect the driving experience.
- This chapter only lists the instructions for some simple maintenance operations that the user can carry out. However, there are still many items that must be completed by qualified technicians with special tools.
- Special care must be taken during vehicle maintenance to prevent accidental injury. The following precautions must be observed.

**CAUTION**

- If coolant overflows, wipe it with a dry cloth or tissue to prevent damage to components or vehicle paint and add coolant in time.
- If brake fluid overflows, rinse it with water to prevent damage to components or vehicle paint.
- Do not drive the vehicle with the air filter removed; otherwise, the engine is excessively worn.
- When replacing wiper blades, do not allow the wipers to scratch the glass surface.
- Before closing the hood, check whether any tool or wipe cloth is left in the engine compartment.

**REMINDER**

- Do not smoke in or near the vehicle to avoid sparks or open flames that may cause fire.
- When working inside or under the vehicle, always wear goggles to protect your eyes against flying or falling objects or splashing liquid.
- As brake fluid may damage the skin or eyes, be careful when filling it. If your skin or eyes are exposed to brake fluid, immediately flush with clean water. If you still feel uncomfortable with your hands or eyes, seek medical attention immediately.

The following items should be checked according to service conditions or specified mileage:

- Coolant level: The radiator and expansion tank should be checked at each charge.
- Windshield washer fluid - check the amount of washer fluid in the fluid reservoir once a month. If the washer fluid is frequently used due to bad weather, increase the frequency of checking.
- Windshield wipers - check the wiper condition once a month. If the wiper cannot clean the windshield completely, check if any damage such as wear and cracking exists.
- Brake fluid level - check the fluid level at least once a month.
- Brake pedal - check whether the brake pedal functions normally.
- EPB switch - check whether the switch functions well.
- 12V battery - check the battery condition and terminal corrosion once a month.
- A/C system - check the operation of the A/C unit weekly.
- Tires - check tire pressure monthly. Check the condition of wear and any embedded objects on the tire surface. Check tread wear and whether there are foreign bodies embedded.
- Windshield defroster - check the defroster outlet once a month while using the heater and A/C.
- Lights - check the lighting system once a month to confirm the state of working.
- Doors - check whether the boot lid and doors can be opened and closed normally and locked firmly.
- Horn - check whether the horn functions normally.

**CAUTION**

- Do not continue driving a vehicle that has not been inspected, as this may result in serious vehicle damage and personal injury.

### Lights

#### Headlight alignment

Headlights are aligned before vehicle delivery. If the vehicle carries heavy load frequently, headlights may need to be realigned. It is recommended to have the headlights aligned by a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

#### Fogging of lights

- Combination lights, tail lights, and turn signals on the side mirrors may become foggy after heavy rain or cleaning. This is similar to condensation on the side window

during rain. It does not mean any problem with your vehicle.

- The lights are a relatively enclosed and narrow space. The temperature is very high when they light up (the mask and reflector could be burned and deformed easily), so they need heat dissipation. There are heat dissipation holes on the lamp housing for convection. The greater the temperature difference is, the more active the convection is. During the convection, the moisture in the air inevitably enters a lamp. Factors such as exposure to sunlight, convection, and bulb heating can cause the moisture in the air to condense into fog or water beads easily on the lamp surface at low temperatures. This is called fogging of lights.

**CAUTION**

- If fog presents inside the headlight and inside the turn signals on side mirrors, it may be due to high air humidity or significant temperature difference between the vehicle and its surroundings. In that case, turn on the headlight or turn signal while driving. The fog will evaporate after a short period of driving.
- If there is a noticeable amount of water inside the lights, it is recommended to drive the vehicle to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for maintenance.

## Sunroof Maintenance

**Panoramic sunroof maintenance**

1. Wipe any dust or sand from the sunroof outer sealing strip with a wet cloth and do not scratch it, for that degrades its sealing performance.
2. Wipe any dust or sand on the injection molding edge of the front glass with a wet cloth and do not scratch the sealing strip, for that degrades the sealing performance;
3. Clean the front end of the rear glass frequently (after the front glass is fully opened) to remove dust, sand, leaves and other debris to prevent drain holes from blockage;
4. Clean the guide rails on both sides and the front flume frequently to prevent dust, sand, leaves and other debris to prevent drain holes from blockage;
5. When washing the vehicle, avoid aiming any high-pressure water guns directly at the sealing strip. This not only easily deforms or damages the sealing strip, but also easily causes water seeping into the vehicle;
6. In winter, if the frozen sunroof is opened, the sealing strip or other parts may be damaged. The vehicle should first be preheated, and the HVAC system should be turned on to speed up the melting of snow and ice. Open the sunroof only after the vehicle is warmer. To avoid the sunroof from freezing again, dry the residual water on the sunroof.
7. Do not open the sunroof fully on extremely bumpy roads. Vibration between the sunroof and the rail may deform related parts and even damage the motor. In addition, do not open the sunroof when it rains or the vehicle is being washed.

**Ordinary sunroof maintenance method**

1. Wipe any dust or sand from the sunroof outer sealing strip with a wet cloth and do not scratch it, for that degrades its sealing performance.
2. Wipe any dust or sand on roof sheet metal with a wet cloth and

do not scratch the sealing strip, for that may wear sealing strip when the sunroof moving and degrade the sealing performance;

3. Clean the guide rails on both sides and the front flume frequently to prevent dust, sand, leaves and other debris to avoid water seeping into the vehicle;
4. When washing the vehicle, avoid aiming any high-pressure water guns directly at the sealing strip. This not only easily deforms or damages the sealing strip, but also easily causes water seeping into the vehicle;
5. In winter, if the frozen sunroof is opened, the sealing strip or other parts may be damaged. The vehicle should first be preheated, and the HVAC system should be turned on to speed up the melting of snow and ice. Open the sunroof only after the vehicle is warmer. To avoid the sunroof from freezing again, dry the residual water on the sunroof.
6. Do not open the sunroof fully on extremely bumpy roads. Vibration between the sunroof and the rail may deform related parts and even damage the motor. In addition, do not open the sunroof when it rains or the vehicle is being washed.

## Vehicle Storage

- If the vehicle needs to be parked for a long time (more than one month), the following preparations shall be made. Proper preparation helps prevent degradation and ensure easy use of the vehicle. If possible, park the vehicle indoors.
- Thoroughly clean and dry the body surface.
- Clean the interior of the vehicle to ensure that carpets and mats are completely dry.
- Shift the gear to P gear.
- Open the window on one side slightly (when parking indoors).
- Pad the front wiper arm with a folded towel or cloth to keep it out of contact with the windscreen.
- To reduce sticking, spray silicone lubricant on the sealing parts of all doors and the boot lid, and apply vehicle body wax on the paint surface where the sealing strips of doors and boot lid contact.
- Cover the vehicle body with a breathable covering made of a "porous material", such as cotton. Non-porous materials, such as plastic sheeting, can build up moisture and damage the paint.

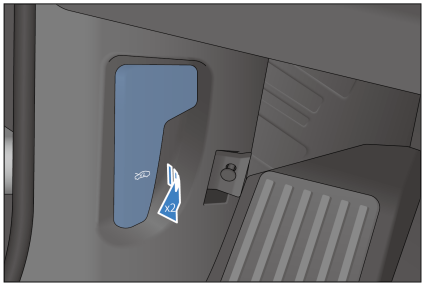
**REMINDER**

- Before transportation or storage, it is recommended that SOC is kept over 50% to ensure the performance of the high-voltage battery and normal power supply of the 12V battery during transportation or storage.

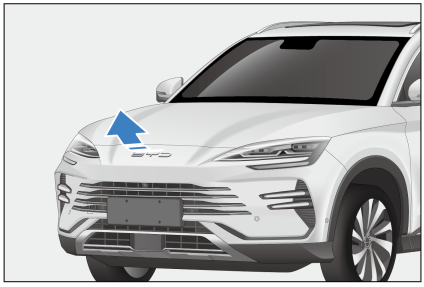
## Opening the Hood

**Opening the hood**

1. Shift to P or N gear, and engage the EPB. Pull up the hood opening handle on the left side of the lower body of the dashboard for 2 consecutive times to slightly open the hood.

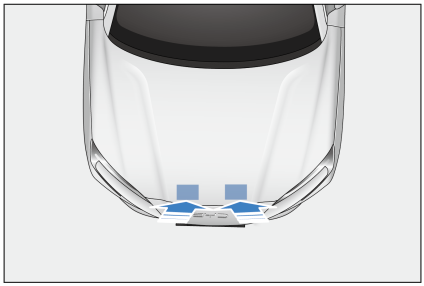


2. Open the hood and lift it up. The hood automatically rises to open.



**Closing the hood**

1. Pull the hood downward to make its lock ring contact with the front compartment lock. Place both hands in the area shown in the figure in the front of the hood, and then press down hard to completely lock the hood.
2. After closing the hood, check whether the latch is securely locked.



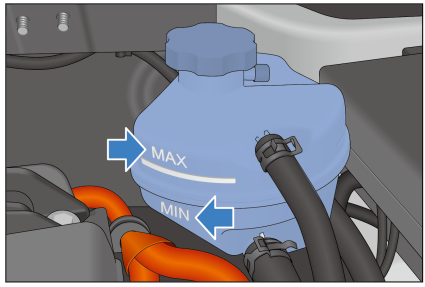
**REMINDER**

- Ensure that the hood is closed and locked firmly before driving. Otherwise, the hood may suddenly open during driving, resulting in an accident.

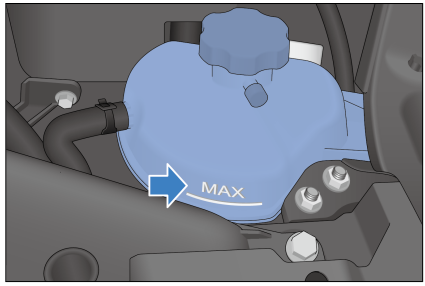
## Refrigerant

Low-temperature expansion tank

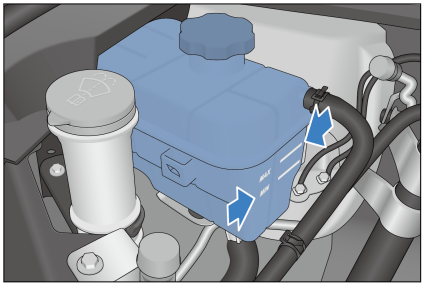
2WD




4WD




High-temperature expansion tank



- The fluid level meets the requirement when it is between the MAX (maximum fluid level) and MIN (minimum fluid level) marks of the expansion tank.
- Always use the coolant with specifications same as the original manufacturer's product. No admixture is required. Different brands and types of coolant should not be mixed.

**REMINDER**

- Go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for coolant addition.

**CAUTION**

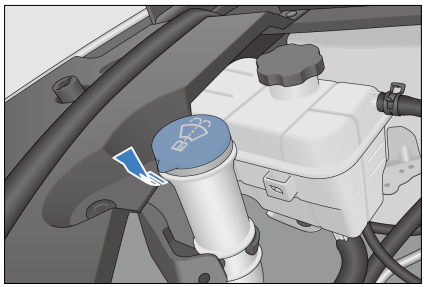
- Do not add any rust inhibitor or other additives to the cooling system The additives may be incompatible with coolant or motor components.
- Before opening the coolant reservoir cover, make sure that the engine, motor, HV electronic control integrated module, coolant reservoir cover and radiator have cooled down. Otherwise, the coolant may eject and cause serious burns.
- Do not open the upper cover of the front compartment fuse box when filling the coolant.

**CAUTION**

- Fill the coolant with a special tool to prevent the coolant from flowing into the fuse box.

## Washer

- During normal use, check the liquid level of the windscreen washer reservoir at least monthly.
- If the windscreen washer is used frequently, the level of the washer reservoir should be checked more frequently.
- High quality windscreen washer fluid should be added to improve stain removal and prevent freezing in cold weather.



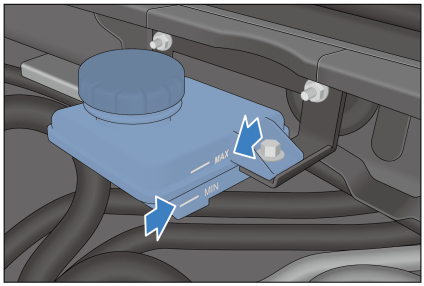
- When you add washer fluid to the fluid reservoir again, use a piece of clean cloth dipped with windscreen washer fluid to clean the windscreen wiper blade, which helps keep the blade edge in good condition.

**CAUTION**

- Do not inject vinegar-water solution into the windscreen washer fluid reservoir.
- It is recommended to use certified windscreen washing fluid.

## Braking System

The fluid level should be between Minimum(MIN)and Maximum(MAX)marks on the reservoir wall. If the fluid level is at or below the MIN (lower limit) mark, Check the brake system for leakage, and check the brake pad for wear.




**REMINDER**

- Check the fluid level in the reservoir at least once a month.
- Replace the brake fluid according to the driving time and mileage specified in the regular maintenance timetable.
- Please use HZY6/DOT4 brake fluid of the same model as that of BYD. Other models of brake fluid are not applicable to the braking system of this vehicle.

## Engine Oil

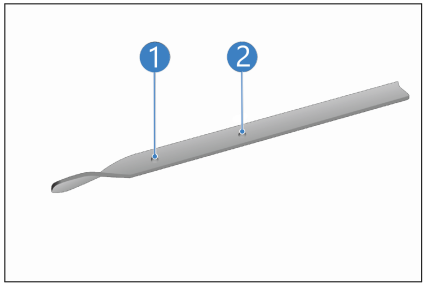
- Be sure to use engine oil with right specifications.
- When purchasing engine oil, check the oil specifications marked on the packaging container, which must conform to the using regulations for this vehicle.

**Recommended engine oil**

- Engine oil plays an important role in ensuring the performance and service life of the engine, so high-quality purified engine oil should be used. It is recommended that you choose BYD original engine oil.
- Engine oil consumption is related to driving habits, weather conditions, and road conditions. The engine oil consumption rate of new engines may be higher.

**Check engine oil**

1. Park the vehicle on a level road, start the engine till it reaches the normal working temperature, and then shut down the engine.
2. After shutdown for 10 min, remove the cover plate on the right side, pull out the oil dipstick, observe the oil level and oil condition, and check whether the oil level is between ① and ②. Add or replace oil as required.




3. Insert the oil dipstick back.

- When the low oil pressure warning light illuminates, please add oil in time.

**WARNING**

- Be careful not to splash oil on other vehicle components.
- The engine oil, engine components, and exhaust system are all with high temperatures,

**WARNING**

which may cause burns. Be careful and wear protective clothing when working in the front compartment.

- Long-time or frequent contact with used engine oil causes skin diseases. Use soapy water and clean water to wash the oil on the skin.

## A/C System

### A/C System

The A/C system is a closed system, and any important maintenance work should be carried out by professionals from a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

The following can be done to ensure effective operation of the A/C system.

- Check the radiator and A/C condenser regularly. Remove leaves, insects and dust accumulated on the front surface. These deposits hinder the airflow and reduce the cooling effect. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for handling.
- In cold months, it is recommended that the A/C is turned on once a week for at least 10min to circulate the lubricating oil in the refrigerant unit.
- If A/C cooling efficiency decreases, go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for maintenance.

**CAUTION**

- Whenever the A/C system is maintained, the maintenance station should use a refrigerant recycling system.

**CAUTION**

- The system can recycle refrigerant to avoid environmental pollution caused by directly discharging refrigerant.

## Wiper Blades

The blade strip, made of synthetic rubber, is a vulnerable part. Various service environment of the vehicle and usage habits of drivers can damage the blades. Therefore, please observe the following to ensure the service life of blades and driving safety:

- Do not use a blade to remove ice from the windscreen surface. Use a customised ice scraper.
- Do not scrape the windscreen surface if it is dirty, greasy or waxy.
- Keep the windscreen surface clean. Do not scrape dust, sand, insects, or foreign bodies on the windscreen surface.
- Do not wax the windscreen when washing the vehicle and maintaining the body paint, as the wax layer reflects light in poor light, consequently affecting the sight and driving safety. After washing the vehicle, rinse the blade with plain water, and use special windscreen wax cleaner to remove the wax layer on the windscreen.
- Do not wash the wiper blade directly with a water gun to prevent damage to the wiper blade due to excessive water pressure.

### Maintenance Rules

- Clean windscreen and blade regularly (preferably once a week or once every two weeks).

- Even if there is no rain, it is recommended to wipe regularly (once every day or once every two days).
- Keep the windscreen fully wet when wiping with wiper blades (when it is not raining, the washer fluid must be sprayed on the windscreen in advance).
- Clean the windscreen with a special windscreen washer fluid.
- Promptly clean mud and insect carcasses stuck to the windscreen with a rag.
- Maintain the windscreen in time in case of scratches by gravel knocking (it is recommended to use resin products for the windscreen repair, and replace the windscreen in case of many or excessive scratches).
- Replace the wiper blades regularly, preferably once every six months.
- Lift the wiper arms up prior to cleaning the windscreen.

## Tire Maintenance

- For safe driving, tyres must be made and sized to fit the vehicle, with good tread and standard tyre pressure.
- The following pages provide details on how to check tyre pressure, damage to and wear of tyres, and the operating method for tyre transposition.

**WARNING**

- Using tyres with excessive wear or insufficient/excessive pressure can result in accidents, severe injury, or death.
- Please follow all instructions in this manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.

**Winter Tires**

- Winter tires provide better traction on snowy roads. The special rubber tread pattern makes the tires less affected by low temperatures and delivers excellent braking performance to improve driving safety.

**Usage tips**

- It is recommended to use winter tires in snow or ice conditions or at temperatures below 7°C. When temperatures rise to above 7°C, install summer or all-season tires instead for driving safety and better performance.
- Winter tires must be the same size, load index, and speed rating as those originally provided by BYD.
- Winter tires must have adequate tread depth. Tires with a tread depth less than 4 mm do not perform well in winter conditions.
- Winter or summer tires are designed for specific acceleration conditions. Use them in the corresponding seasons to avoid poor traction or braking performance.
- Do not exceed the speed rating of winter tires, which is relatively low.
- After installing winter tires, inflate them to the design pressures.

**Tyre Inflation**

- Keep tyres properly inflated to provide the best combination of maneuverability, tread life, and driving comfort.
- Driving with underinflated tyres leads to uneven tyre wear, affect maneuverability and power consumption, and even may cause air leakage due to overheating.

- Over-inflated tyres reduce riding comfort and are prone to damage from uneven roads. In severe cases, the risk of tyre bursting poses severe threats to the safety of the entire vehicle. Over-inflation will also cause uneven wear and tear of tyres, affecting tyre service life.
- The vehicle is equipped with a tyre pressure monitoring device. In a cold state, you decide whether to inflate the tyres according to the tyre pressure values displayed on the instrument cluster.
- Tyre pressure should be measured while tyres are at ambient temperatures. This means the measurement should be carried out at least three hours after stopping the vehicle. If you have to drive before measuring the tire pressures, as long as the driving distance does not exceed 1.6 km, the tires can still be considered to be in a cold state.
- If the tire pressures are checked when the tires are hot (after several kilometers of driving), the pressure readings are 30~40 kPa (0.3~0.4 kgf/cm$^2$) higher than those in the cold state. This is normal. Do not deflate the tires to reach the tire pressure readings specified for the cold state, otherwise, the tire pressures are insufficient.

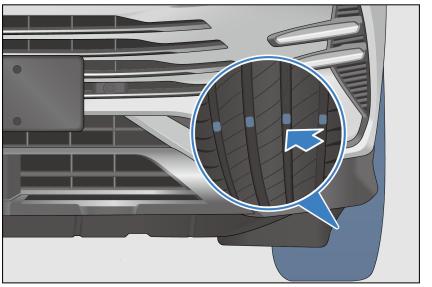
**REMINDER**

- The recommended cold tyre pressure is indicated on the label affixed to the driver's door frame.

- Tubeless tyres can self-seal punctures. However, as leakage is usually very slow, the leaks should be carefully identified as soon as the tyre begins to depressurize.

**Checks**

- Whenever checking tyre inflation, check tyres for damage, foreign body piercing and wear.
  - Replace the tyre if bumps, or tread or side damage are found. Tyres should be replaced if any of the case happens.
  - Replace the tyre if there are cracks on its side, or if its fabric or cord can be seen.



- Replace tyres with excessive tread wear.
- Wear marks are cast inside tire treads. When the tread is worn at this point, a band mark is shown across the tread, indicating the tread thickness is less than 1.6 mm. The adhesion of tires worn to this extent is very small on wet roads.
- When the tread is worn to the point where the wear mark is exposed, there is serious performance loss, and the tires must be replaced.

**Maintenance**

- In addition to proper inflation, proper wheel alignment also helps reduce tread wear.
- If uneven tyre wear is found, drive the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to check wheel alignment.

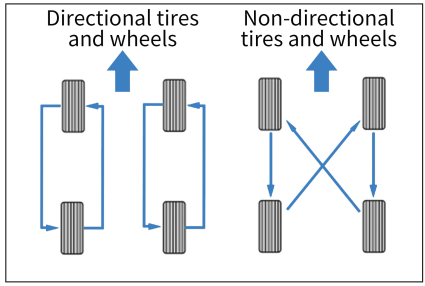
- The vehicle has been balanced in the factory, but tires need to be re-balanced after driving for a period of time.
- If you feel continuous vibration when driving at a high speed (80 km/h) but not at a low speed, it is recommended to drive your vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for a tire inspection.
- Be sure to balance the tire again after a tire is repaired.
- After installing a new tyre or replacing a new wheel, always perform tyre balancing.

**CAUTION**

- Improper wheel balancers will get stuck, become loose and fall off. While driving, this will damage the car or surrounding objects.
- Improper wheel balancers will damage the aluminum rims of the vehicle. Therefore, it is recommended to use original wheel balancers.

### Tire Rotation

- In order to make tire wear the same and prolong the service life of tires, it is recommended to perform tire rotation regularly and conduct four-wheel alignment, inspection and adjustment as well.
- Do not rotate tires when a spare tire is used for the vehicle.




- When purchasing and replacing tires, you may find that some tires are "directional", indicating those tires can be rotated in only one direction. If directional tires are used, only the front and rear wheels can be swapped in tire rotation. See the figure.

### Replacing Tyres and Wheels

- The original tyres of this vehicle are selected to maximize the performance of the vehicle, and can provide you with the best combination of maneuverability, riding comfort, and service life.
- It is recommended to go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for replacement of original tyres.
- If radial tyres with different dimensions, load range, rated speed and maximum cold tyre pressure (marked on the side of the tyre) from that of the original tyres are used for replacement, or radial tyres and diagonal tyres are used at the same time, the braking capacity, driving force (ground adhesion) and steering accuracy of the vehicle are reduced.
- Unsuitable tyres affect the maneuverability and stability of the vehicle, and may lead to accidents.
- It is better to replace four tyres at the same time. If it is impossible or unnecessary, replace the pair of front tyres or rear tyres at the same

time. Replacing only one tyre seriously affects the maneuverability of the vehicle.

- ABS (Anti-lock brake system) works by comparing the speed of wheels. When replacing a tyre, use a tyre of the same size as the original tyre. The size and structure of the tyre can affect wheel speed and may lead to uncoordinated system operation.
- If the wheel needs to be replaced, ensure that the specifications of the new wheel match those of the original wheel. New wheels are available for purchase at BYD authorised dealer or service providers. Please consult a BYD authorised dealer or service provider before replacing the wheels.

**REMINDER**

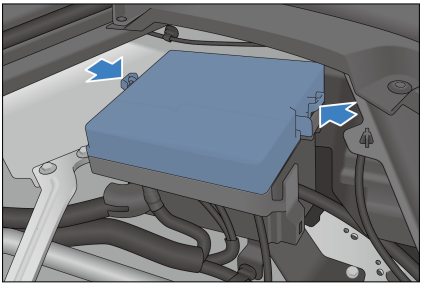
Please observe the following precautions to ensure proper vehicle maneuverability and control.

- Do not mix radial tyres, bias belted tyres, or diagonal ply tyres on the vehicle.
- Do not use tyres with dimensions other than those recommended by the manufacturer.

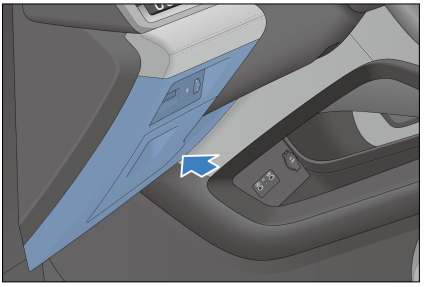
## Fuses

All circuits on the vehicle are equipped with fuses to prevent short circuits or overloads. These fuses are installed in 4 fuse boxes respectively.

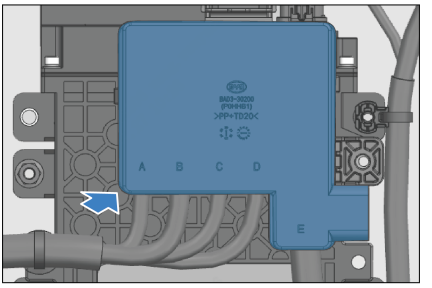
- The front compartment fuse box is located beside the left fender of front compartment.
  - Remove the upper cover of the front compartment fuse box, and turn over the upper cover to check the label of the front compartment fuse box.



- The dashboard fuse box is located in the lower shield of the dashboard.
  - Remove the left shield of the dashboard first and then the lower shield to check the dashboard fuse.



- The positive pole fuse box is located under the front passenger seat.
  - Dismentle the front passenger seat and open the positive pole fuse box cover to check it.



**REMINDER**

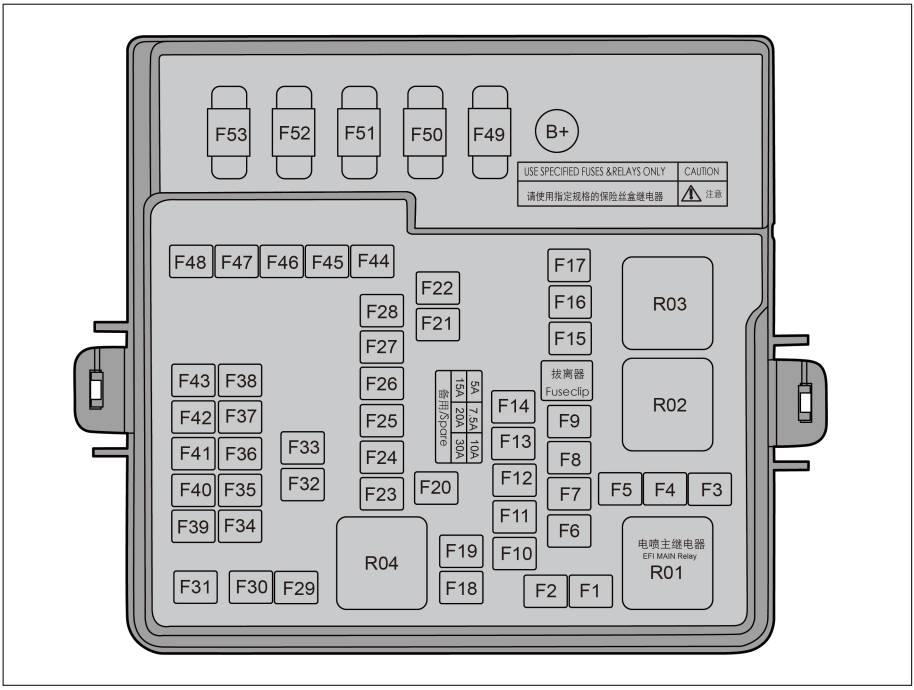
- Do not use any fuse with an amperage higher than the rated value, or any other object to replace fuses. Doing so can result in serious damage and potentially cause a fire.
- The ignition point of the front compartment is used to start the vehicle by electrifying for a short time. Please do not electrify the vehicle with large current for a long time.
- Do not open the upper cover of the front compartment fuse box when filling the coolant.

**REMINDER**

- Fill the coolant with a special tool to prevent the coolant from flowing into the fuse box.

- Replacement of blown fuses with ones of higher amperage can significantly increase the likelihood of damage to the electrical system.
- If you do not have a substitution fuse with an amperage matching the circuit, you should replace it with a fuse with a lower amperage.

**Under-Hood Fuse Box Nameplate**

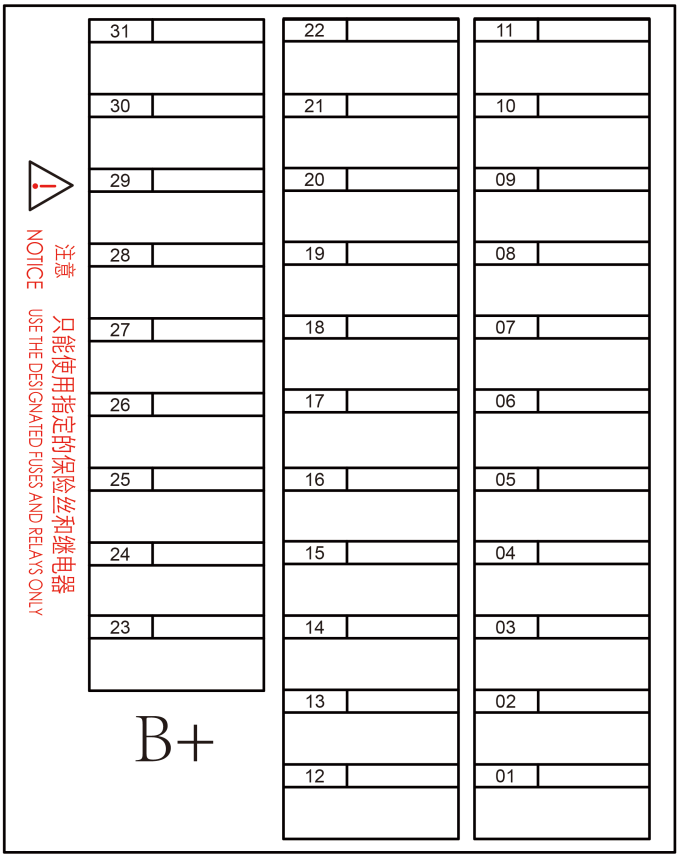


| No. | Ampere (A) | Protected Component or Circuit |
|---|---|---|
| F1 | 40 | Electronic fuel injection system |
| F2 | - | - |
| F3 | 10 | Fuel injector |
| F4 | 30 | Electronic fuel injection system ECU |
| F5 | 20 | Ignition coil |
| F6 | 15 | Ignition coil |
| F7 | 10 | Oxygen sensor |
| F8 | - | - |
| F9 | 5 | Engine ECU |
| F10 | 15 | Left combination headlight |
| F11 | 15 | Right combination headlight |
| F12 | 7.5 | Compressor |
| F13 | 10 | Motor controller |
| F14 | 10 | Rear motor controller |
| F15 | 5 | Vehicle control unit |
| F16 | 40 | Constant power |
| F17 | - | - |
| F18 | - | - |
| F19 | - | - |
| F20 | - | - |
| F21 | 30 | Front wiper |
| F22 | 30 | Rear windshield defroster |
| F23 | 10 | Vehicle control unit |
| F24 | 10 | Electrically controlled coolant pump |
| F25 | 10 | BMS |

| No. | Ampere (A) | Protected Component or Circuit |
|---|---|---|
| F26 | 10 | USB |
| F27 | 15 | Auxiliary power |
| F28 | - | - |
| F29 | - | - |
| F30 | 60 | ESC |
| F31 | 25 | Low-temperature cooling water pump |
| F32 | - | - |
| F33 | 5 | BMS |
| F34 | 15 | Steering Wheel Heating |
| F35 | 5 | Rear body controller |
| F36 | 7.5 | Engine ECU |
| F37 | 7.5 | ETC |
| F38 | 10 | SRS |
| F39 | 5 | ADAS |
| F40 | - | - |
| F41 | 5 | EPS |
| F42 | 5 | ESC |
| F43 | - | - |
| F44 | 60 | ESC |
| F45 | - | - |
| F46 | - | - |
| F47 | - | - |
| F48 | 10 | Rear Wiper |
| F49 | - | - |
| F50 | 70 | C-EPS |
| F51 | 60A | Blower |

| No. | Ampere (A) | Protected Component or Circuit |
|---|---|---|
| F52 | - | - |
| F53 | 60 | Engine water pump |

**Nameplate of Dashboard Fuse Box**




| No. | Ampere (A) | Protected Component or Circuit |
|---|---|---|
| 01 | 30 | Rear body control module |
| 02 | 30 | Constant power |

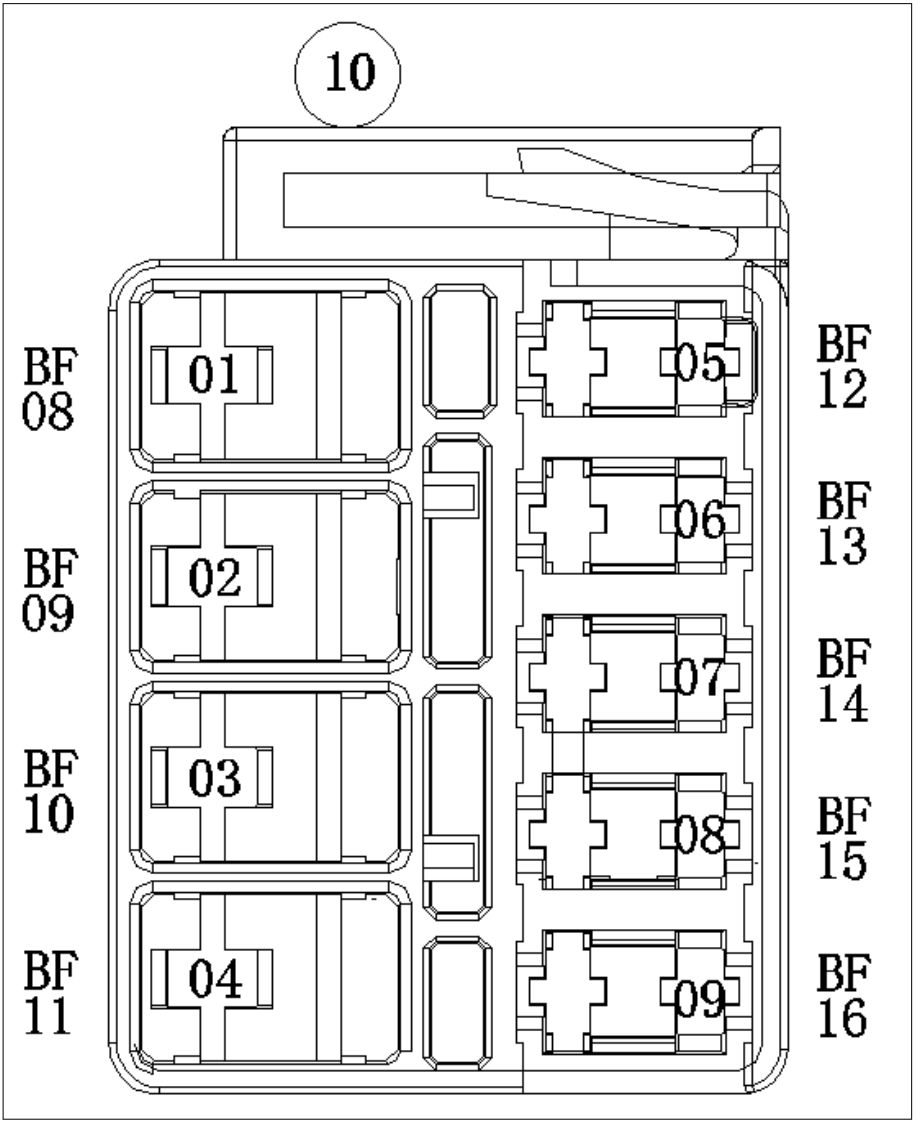
| No. | Ampere (A) | Protected Component or Circuit |
|---|---|---|
| 03 | 10 | Alcohol interlock |
| 04 | 10 | Diagnostic port |
| 05 | 10 | Wireless charger |
| 06 | 5 | Gearshift panel |
| 07 | 5 | Brake light switch |
| 08 | 20 | Infotainment system |
| 09 | 20 | External amplifier |
| 10 | 5 | ADAS |
| 11 | 10 | Combination switch |
| 12 | - | - |
| 13 | - | - |
| 14 | 20 | Low pressure fuel pump |
| 15 | 10 | Rear left combination light |
| 16 | 10 | Rear right combination light |
| 17 | 5 | On-board charger |
| 18 | 5 | Tank isolating valve |
| 19 | 30 | Rear body controller |
| 20 | 30 | Rear body controller |
| 21 | 30 | Left front electric seat |
| 22 | 30 | Right front power seat |
| 23 | 15 | Rear USB |
| 24 | 20 | Trailer hitch |
| 25 | 7.5 | ECALL |
| 26 | - | - |
| 27 | - | - |
| 28 | - | - |
| 29 | - | - |

| No. | Ampere (A) | Protected Component or Circuit |
|---|---|---|
| 30 | - | - |
| 31 | - | - |

**Positive Pole Fuse Box Nameplate**

| No. | Ampere (A) | Descriptions |
|---|---|---|
| BF01 | 80 | Dashboard PDB |
| BF02 | 100 | Left body control module |
| BF03 | 60 | External fuse holder |
| BF04 | 125 | Stepless fan |
| BF05 | 200 | Right body control module |
| BF06 | 300 | DC |

**External fuse holder**




| No. | Ampere (A) | Descriptions |
|---|---|---|
| BF11 | 30 | Generic domain |
| BF12 | 30 | Towing system |

| No. | Ampere (A) | Descriptions |
|---|---|---|
| BF13 | 30 | Generic domain |

# 07 WHEN FAULTS OCCUR

When Faults Occur.....236

# When Faults Occur

## If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted

**REMINDER**

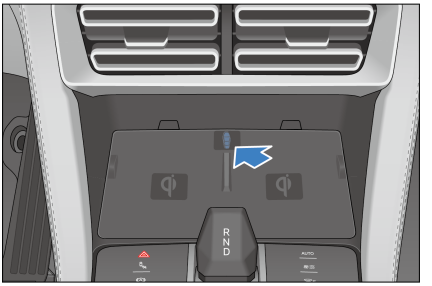
- If the vehicle breaks down and an emergency stop is needed, promptly put on the reflective vest.

If the electronic smart key indicator does not flash, and the vehicle cannot be started with the start function, the battery may be exhausted. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for battery replacement as soon as possible. In this case, you may start the vehicle in no-power mode.

**CAUTION**

- Do not place the key in areas at high temperatures.
- Do not hit or slam the key with hard objects.
- Keep the key away from magnetic fields.
- If the vehicle is not to be used after the vehicle enters the anti-theft state with doors locked, please keep the key far away from the vehicle to avoid 12V battery consumption resulting from automatic key locating function.

1. Use the mechanical key to unlock the vehicle.
2. Depress the brake pedal and meanwhile press the START/ STOP button, and the smart key warning light on the instrument cluster goes on, with a beep from the instrument cluster buzzer.
3. Within 30s after a beep from the instrument cluster buzzer, place the smart key close to the no-power mark of the auxiliary dashboard (as the figure shows). Then, the smart key warning light goes out and the vehicle is started within 5s.




## Failure to Start the Vehicle

**Simple Checks**

Before the inspection, make sure that the vehicle is started according to the correct starting procedure (refer to ***P128*** in the chapter of USING AND DRIVING) and check whether the fuel is sufficient. At the same time, check whether the vehicle can be started with the spare key. If it can be started, the original key may have been damaged. In this case, have the key checked by a BYD authorized service provider. If all keys cannot be used, the key or smart key system may fail. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

**If the motor drives the engine to rotate at normal speed but the engine cannot run:**

1. Restart the vehicle.
2. If the engine cannot be started, the cause may be engine oil spillage due to repeated starts.

3. If the engine still cannot be started, adjustment or repair is required. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

## If Engine Flameout Occurs during Driving

- Slowly reduce the speed and keep driving in a straight line. Carefully drive the vehicle off the road to a safe place.
- Turn on the hazard warning lights.
- Try to restart the engine.
- The engine starts and stops frequently due to the lack of fuel.
  - If there is little fuel in the fuel tank, it is normal to repeat the startup and shutdown cycle; if it is identified that there is little fuel in the fuel tank, the engine starts and shut down repeatedly, thus failing to start. If the fuel in the tank is used up before refueling, the engine frequently starts and stops for some time. However, after the fuel pipe is filled with fuel, the engine enters the normal operation state.

## Engine Overheated

If the engine coolant temperature gauge indicates a high level and power loss is found, it indicates that the engine is overheated, and the following procedures should be followed:

1. Drive the vehicle away from heavy traffic and park it in a safe place. Turn on the hazard warning light switch, pull the EPB switch, and press P gear button. If the A/C is used, turn off the A/C and place a warning triangle at the corresponding position behind the vehicle according to the regulations.
2. If coolant is spraying from the auxiliary tank, stop the engine and open the hood after the steam disappears If no coolant is sprayed, keep the engine running and confirm that the cooling fan is working. If the fan is not working, stop the engine.

**REMINDER**

- To avoid personal injury, keep the hood closed until no coolant flows out. The flow of coolant indicates high pressure.

3. Check the radiator, hose and vehicle underneath for obvious coolant leakage.

**WARNING**

- When the engine is running, keep hands and clothes at a certain distance from the rotating fan and engine pulley.

4. In case of coolant leakage, stop the engine immediately and contact a BYD authorized service provider for help.
5. If there is no obvious leakage, check the expansion tank. If coolant is insufficient, be sure to open the expansion tank cover after the engine coolant temperature drops to the normal value.When the engine is running, add coolant into the expansion tank to the upper scale mark. Cover the expansion tank cover properly and start the engine for 2 to 3 cycles (start the fan without turning on the A/C). After the engine coolant temperature drops to the normal value, check the level in the expansion tank again. If necessary, add more coolant to the appropriate scale. A serious loss of coolant indicates a leakage in the system. In this case, contact a BYD authorized service provider for inspection immediately.

**WARNING**

- To avoid serious injury caused by high-temperature steam and liquid ejection, do not open the auxiliary tank cover when the engine and radiator are hot.

After parking, if the high-voltage battery SOC is low, do not use the A/C for a long time, because it consumes battery SOC. Low battery SOC triggers the engine to generate electricity, which may cause an accident or fire due to engine overheating.

## If the Vehicle Needs Towing

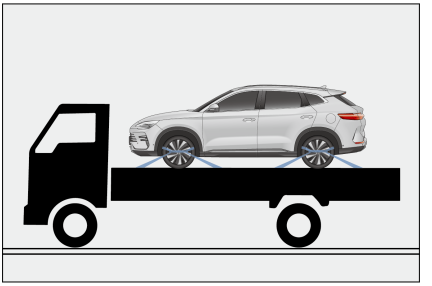
If the vehicle needs towing, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider, a professional towing service, or the organisation you joined for roadside assistance.

**WARNING**

- The vehicle must not be towed by other vehicles using only ropes or chains.

Common towing methods include:

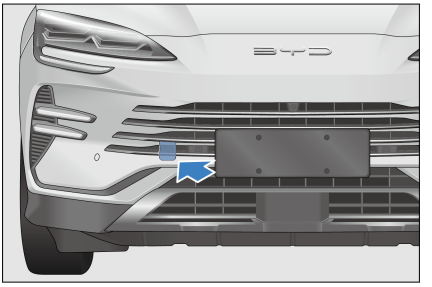
- Flatbed device
  - When the vehicle is faulty and needs towing, a flatbed trailer is the best choice. The front and rear wheels must be off the ground when the vehicle is being towed, otherwise high-voltage components will be damaged.



**Tow Eye**

- The position to fasten the front towing hook is shown in the figure.

1. Open the cover with a straight screwdriver.
2. Install the tow eye in the tow eye opening.

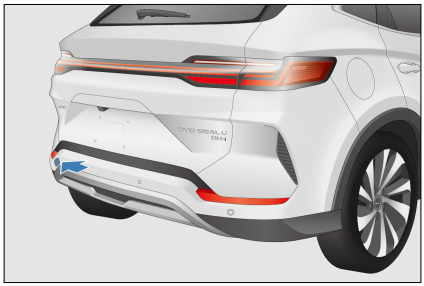


**REMINDER**

- Towing the vehicle with a tow eye is not recommended. You'd better contact a professional towing service or the organisation you joined for roadside assistance.
- Only the in-vehicle tow eye can be used. Otherwise, your vehicle will be damaged. Do not tow the vehicle from the rear with four wheels staying on the ground, to avoid damage to the vehicle.

**Rear Towing Hook**

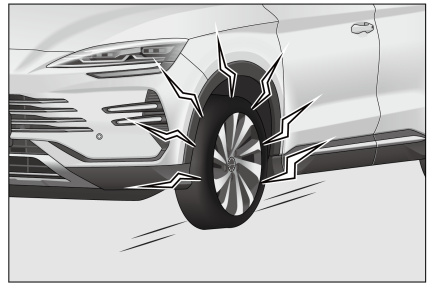
- The installation point of vehicle rear towing hook is shown in the illustration. Press the edge of the towing hook plug on the rear bumper as shown in the figure, open the rear cover, and install the towing hook provided with the vehicle.



- If the vehicle is stuck and underpinning accident, please contact professional rescue or call the customer service hotline.
- In an emergency, when the vehicle is rescued or the towing hook is needed to rescue other trapped vehicles, please follow the following precautions to avoid vehicle damage or personal injury.
  - The driver of the towed vehicle must sit in the vehicle to control the vehicle, and the steering system and braking system of the vehicle must be in normal condition;
  - The vehicle being towed shall not carry persons except the driver, and shall not tow the trailer;
  - The towed vehicle is in "N" gear;
  - The width and weight of the tractor to be pulled shall not be greater than the width and weight of the vehicle;
  - The distance between the tractor and the tractor should be greater than 4m and less than 10m;
  - Both the tractor and the tractor to be pulled should turn on the emergency warning light;
  - The towing vehicle is in good condition, and the towing speed shall not exceed 5Km/h;
  - When towing the vehicle, the tractor should first straighten the traction rope (bar) slowly, and then continue to increase the force to avoid accelerating the start of towing;
  - When towing the vehicle, it should be ensured that the surrounding area is spacious and unobstructed, and no person is near the towing device;
  - When the vehicle is untrapped, the direction of the vehicle is controlled to be consistent with the direction of the towing force, and it is forbidden to drag from the side or vertical angle;
  - Only the in-vehicle tow eye can be used and use it correctly.

## If a Tire Goes Flat

- Keep straight and slow down the speed. Drive the vehicle off the busy road to a safe place. Park on solid, flat ground and avoid motorway forks. Park on solid, flat ground.
- Engage the EPB and press the "P" button.



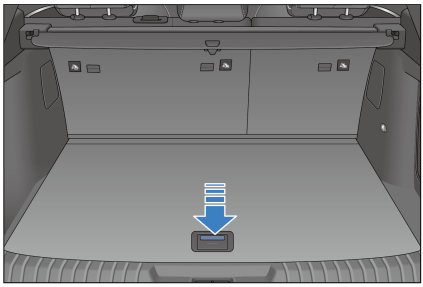
- Power off the vehicle and turn on the hazard warning light.
- Be sure to have all passengers get off the vehicle and ask them to go to a safe place away from crowded traffic.
- To prevent slipping, secure the vehicle by wedging the tyre diagonally against the flat tyre.

**CAUTION**

- Do not continue driving with a flat tyre. Even a short distance of driving with flat tyre can cause irreparable damage.

### In-Vehicle Tools

These tools are stored in a tool box under the boot cover flap.



In-Vehicle tools includes: warning triangle, reflective vest, removal clamp for wheel nut cap, jack rocker wrench, towing hook and so on.

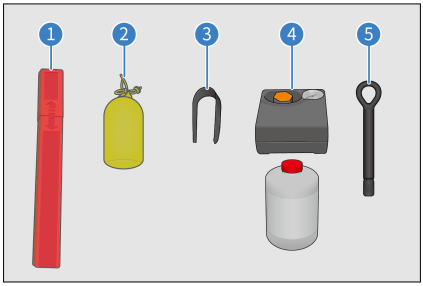
①Warning triangle

②Reflective vest

③Removal clamp for wheel nut cap

④Tire repair device

⑤Towing Hook




### Placing the warning triangle

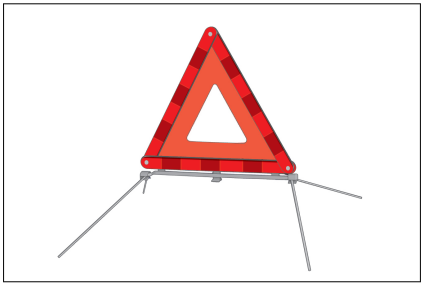
**REMINDER**

- When parking for repair, remember to place the red triangle side facing oncoming vehicles, 328 ft - 656 ft (100-200 m) away from the vehicle. After the repair, recover the warning triangle for future use.

The warning triangle is used to warn vehicles coming from behind and to avoid collisions due to high speed or late braking.

How to use the warning triangle:

1. Take the warning triangle out of its box.
2. Attach the ends to form a triangle.
3. Mount the supports as shown.



**Using tyre repair kit**

- The tyre repair kit is used to seal small cuts, especially cuts in tread pattern. The tire repair device is only for emergency purposes so that you can drive the vehicle to the nearest maintenance center.

**WARNING**

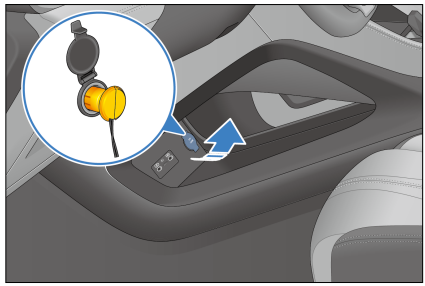
- The tire sealant can repair holes within 6 mm in diameter. If the diameter is larger than 6 mm or the hole is in another position on the tire, do not use this product. Call for roadside assistance.
- Tire sealant is highly flammable and harmful to health. Take the necessary precautions to prevent fire and avoid contact with skin, eyes and clothing; keep away from children; and do not inhale its vapor.

**In case of contact with tyre sealant:**

- If tyre sealant comes into contact with the skin or gets into the eyes, thoroughly flush the affected body part immediately with plenty of clean water.
- Change contaminated clothing immediately.
- In case of an allergic reaction, seek medical attention immediately.
- If tyre sealant is ingested by accident, rinse mouth thoroughly and drink plenty of water immediately. Do not induce vomiting, but seek medical attention immediately.

**Using the tyre repair kit**

- Please refer to the label on the inflator for the detailed usage of the tyre repair device.
- If the inflator needs to be connected to the power supply, please connect the power plug to the 12V outlet in the vehicle, start the vehicle, and turn on the inflator switch.The tire repair device is filled into the tire together with air through the hose of the inflator.



**REMINDER**

- When plugging the power plug into the backup power supply in the vehicle, make sure that the inflator pump is turned off.
- The inflator can only be turned on for up to 10 minutes.
- The working current of the backup power supply is less than 10A.
- During use, the voltage and power should not exceed the rated voltage of 12V and rated power of 120W marked on the backup power supply, otherwise, there are potential safety hazards.

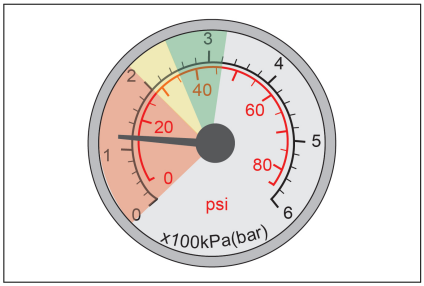
**WARNING**

- When starting the vehicle, the vehicle should be located outdoors or in a well-ventilated place (such as a building).

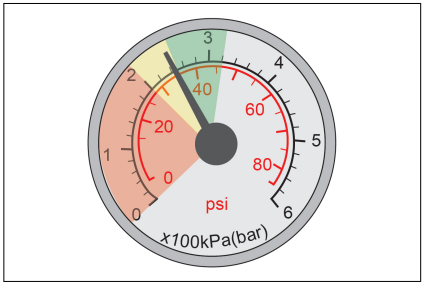
**WARNING**

Running the engine in a nonventilated or poorly ventilated place may cause suffocation.

- Observe the tyre pressure reading on the inflator.
  - If the tyre pressure does not reach 200 kPa (2.0 bar) within 10 minutes (red area shown in the figure), turn off the inflator. You are recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.




- If the tire pressure reaches between 200 and 320 kPa (between 2.0 and 3.2 bar) (green and yellow areas shown in the figure), remove the kit as soon as possible and drive at a speed below 80 km/h within 1 minute, with the furthest driving distance not exceeding 10 km, so that the tire sealant is evenly distributed within the tire.




- Stop and check the repaired tire, and observe again the tire pressure gauge reading on the inflator.
  - If the tire pressure is greater than 250 kPa (2.5 bar), drive to the nearest service center at a speed below 80 km/h.
  - If the tire pressure is between 200 to 250 kPa (2.0 to 2.5 bar), inject the tire sealant into the tire and observe the tire pressure readings on the inflator.
  - If the tyre pressure does not reach 200 kPa (2.0 bar), contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

**REMINDER**

- Using tyre repair device on damaged tyres is only an emergency solution. Please change the tyres at a professional repair centre as soon as possible. It is recommended that you contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider and inform the maintenance technician that the tyres contain tyre sealant.
- After using the tyre repair device, it is recommended that you purchase new tyre sealant and inflation hose at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Avoid hard acceleration and high-speed turns.
- Do not exceed 80km/h and replace the flat tire as soon as possible (within 200km). Do not continue driving in case of strong vibration, unstable driving performance or noise during driving.
- When the tire sealant is about to expire (see the label on the can for

**REMINDER**

the exact date), replace it with a new one.

# 08 SPECIFICATIONS

Vehicle Data..... 246
Vehicle Identification..... 250
Warning Labels..... 251
Transponder Mounting Position.... 254
Declarations of Conformity..... 254

# Vehicle Data

Dimensions:

| Item | Data | |
|---|---|---|
| Product model | SEAL U DM-i 2WD | SEAL U DM-i 4WD |
| Length (mm) | 4775 | 4775 |
| Width(mm)(excluding external mirrors) | 1890 | 1890 |
| Height (mm) | 1670 | 1670 |
| Wheelbase (mm) | 2765 | 2765 |
| Front track (mm) | 1630 | 1630 |
| Rear track (mm) | 1630 | 1630 |
| Front overhang (mm) | 1010 | 1010 |
| Rear overhang (mm) | 1000 | 1000 |
| Approach angle (°) | 19 | 19 |
| Departure angle (°) | 21 | 21 |

Vehicle mass:

| Item | Data | |
|---|---|---|
| Product model | SEAL U DM-i 2WD | SEAL U DM-i 4WD |
| Curb weight (kg) | 1940 | 2100 |
| Curb weight - front axle load (kg) | 1108 | 1152 |
| Curb weight - rear axle load (kg) | 832 | 948 |
| Max. allowable total mass (kg) | 2350 | 2510 |
| Front axle load at max. allowable total mass (kg) | 1220 | 1265 |
| Rear axle load at max. allowable total mass (kg) | 1130 | 1245 |
| Number of occupants (persons) | 5 | 5 |

Drive motor parameters:

| Item | Data | |
|---|---|---|
| Product model | SEAL U DM-i 2WD | SEAL U DM-i 4WD |
| Drive Motor Model | TZ220XYE | Front: TZ220XYS Rear: BYD-2015TZ-XS-D |
| Type | Permanent magnet synchronous motor | Permanent magnet synchronous motor |
| Drive type | 2WD | 4WD |
| Rated power/revolving speed/torque (kW/RPM/N · m) | 60/4775/120 | Front: 70/5570/120<br>60/5172/112 |
| Peak power/revolving speed/torque (kW/rpm/N · m) | 145/15000/300 | Front: 150/15000/300<br>Rear: 120/15000/250 |

Engine Data:

| Item | Data | |
|---|---|---|
| Product model | SEAL U DM-i 2WD | SEAL U DM-i 4WD |
| Engine Model | BYD472QA | BYD476ZQC |
| Engine Type | Inline four-cylinder | Inline four-cylinder |
| Displacement(L) | 1.498 | 1.497 |
| Maximum net engine power(kW/rpm) | 72/6000 | 96/5200 |
| Corresponding speed of maximum net engine power(r/min) | 6000 | 5200 |
| Max. engine torque(N·m/rpm) | 122/4000-4500 | 220/1500-3500 |
| Emission level | European emission standard | European emission standard |

Vehicle power performance and economic efficiency:

| Item | Data | |
|---|---|---|
| Product model | SEAL U DM-i 2WD | SEAL U DM-i 4WD |
| Maximum design speed | ⩾170 | ⩾180 |
| EV/HEV Maximum gradeability | ⩾30/⩾30 | ⩾30/⩾30 |

Wheels and tires:

| Item | Data |
|---|---|
| Tire specification | 235/50 R19 |
| Tire pressure (kPa) | Front/Rear: 250/250 |
| Wheel dynamic balance requirement (g) | ⩽10g·cm (single side dispaly of dynamic balancer) |

Wheel alignment parameters (under curb weight):

| Item | Data | |
|---|---|---|
| Front wheel camber (°) | -0.84°±0.75° | -0.85°±0.75° |
| Front wheel toe-in (°) | 0.14±0.16° | 0.21±0.16° |
| Kingpin inclination angle (°) | 11.10°±0.75° | 11.13°±0.75° |
| Kingpin caster angle (°) | 2.24°±0.75° | 2.28°±0.75° |
| Rear wheel camber (°) | -0.62°±0.75° | -0.56°±0.75° |
| Rear wheel toe-in (°) | 0.16±0.16° | 0.18±0.16° |

Braking system:

| Item | Data |
|---|---|
| Free stroke of brake pedal (mm) | 3.4-10.2 |
| Front brake disc thickness (mm) | 26-28 |
| Rear brake disc thickness (mm) | 9-11 |
| Thickness of front brake pad (mm) | 2-8 |
| Thickness of rear brake pad (mm) | 2-6.5 |

High-voltage battery

| Item | Data | |
|---|---|---|
| Product model | SEAL U DM-i 2WD | SEAL U DM-i 4WD |
| High-voltage battery type | Lithium iron phosphate battery | Lithium iron phosphate battery |
| High-voltage battery rated capacity (AH) | 54/78.4 | 54 |

Seats:

| Item | Data |
|---|---|
| Set backrest angle of front seats | 25° |
| Set front and rear positions of front seats | 195 mm forward and 45 mm backward of slide rail, the slide rail angle of 4.5° |
| Normal service conditions of front seatbacks | Design position of the backrest: 22° forward and 44° backward |
| Set backrest angle of rear seats | 28° |
| Set front and rear positions of rear seats | Rear seats can not be adjusted. |
| Normal service conditions of third-row seatbacks | Design position: 15° forward and 5.625° backward |

Oil parameters (2WD):

| Maintenance item | Model and specification | Filling Amount |
|---|---|---|
| BYD472QA engine oil | 0W-20 oil meeting API SP (or ACEA C5) and above specifications | 3.0L |
| EHS special gear oil | EHSF-2LV | 3.0L |
| Brake fluid | SINOPEC HZY6 | 970ml±50ml |
| Coolant | Ethylene glycol type anti-rust antifreeze | 6.0L±0.5L<br>7.5L±0.5L |

Oil parameters (4WD):

| Maintenance item | Model and specification | Filling Amount |
|---|---|---|
| BYD476QC engine oil | SP 0W-20; C5 0W-20 and meet the SN+/SP specification | 3.7L with filter change;3.5L without filter change |
| EHS special gear oil | EHSF-2LV | 3.7L |
| Special gear oil for rear drive motor assembly | Castrol BOT 384 | 0.8L |
| Brake fluid | SINOPEC HZY6 | 970ml±50ml |
| Coolant | Ethylene glycol type anti-rust antifreeze | 7.0L±0.5L<br>7.5L±0.5L |

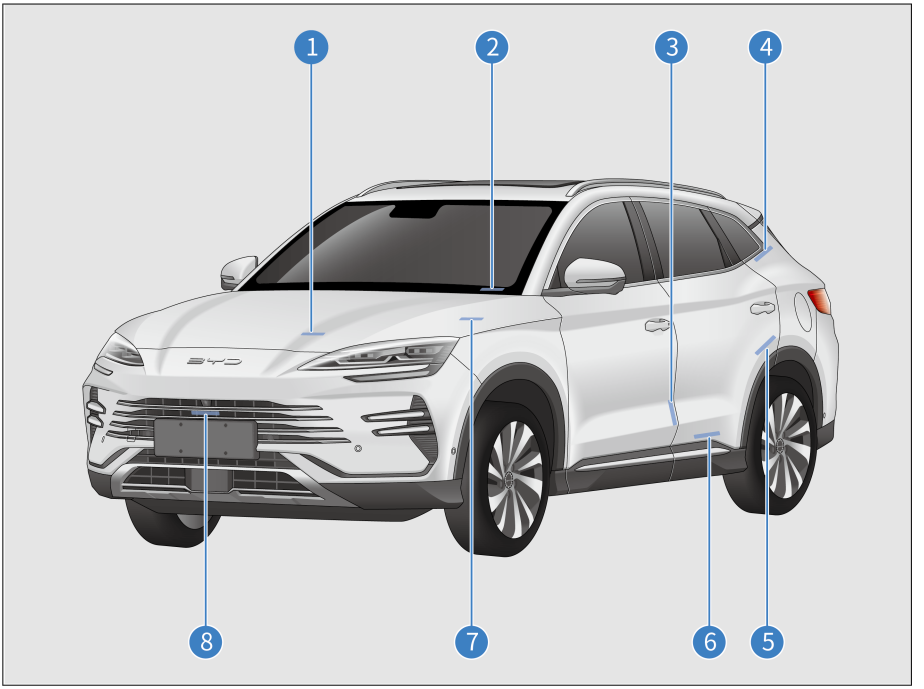
Note:

1 . The actual fuel consumption is related to vehicle conditions, road conditions, driving habits, and other factors.

2 . The vehicle body width does not include the side mirrors. The vehicle body height includes the roof rack and antenna base without the antenna.

# Vehicle Identification

## Vehicle Identification Number(VIN)




①Attached to the gearbox;

② Attached on the VIN slot on the upper cover of the front windscreen cross sill

③Attached to inner sheet metal surface of front left door;

④Attached to sheet metal surface of left frame of boot lid;

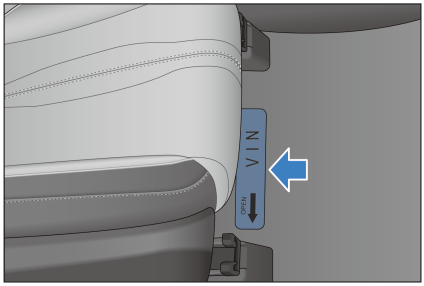
⑤Attached to sheet metal surface above rear left wheel;

⑥Attached to the sheet metal surface of the inner panel of the rear left door sill;

⑦Attached to inner sheet metal surface of the hood;

⑧Attached to the front anti-collision beam;

⑨Engraved under the front passenger seat.

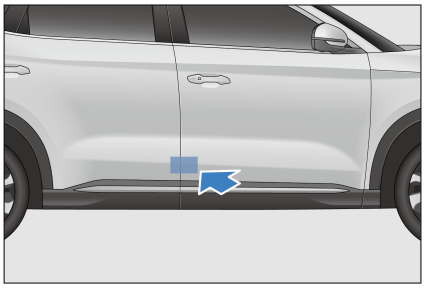



Note: The VIN can be read in the upper right corner of the page for the corresponding model after connecting the VDS. For details, please refer to the VDS operation manual.

## Vehicle Nameplate

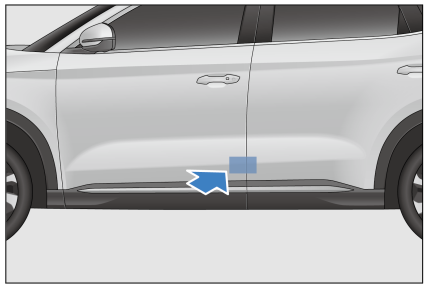
It is pasted under the right B-pillar lock ring including:

- Company name
- WVTA Certificate No.
- VIN
- Total Mass
- Trailer mass
- Maximum allowable mass of front axle
- Maximum allowable mass of rear axle



**Label for Information Pertaining to Agents in the EU**

The label for information pertaining to agents in the EU is attached to the side sheet metal surface at the lower end of the left B-pillar.



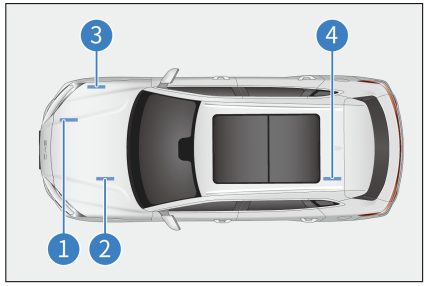
## Model and Serial Number of Drive Motor

①The model and number of the engine are engraved on the engine block.

②The model and number of the front drive motor are engraved on the front drive motor housing.

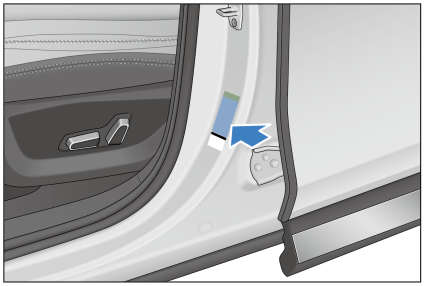
③The model and number of the front drive motor are engraved on the inner panel of the hood.

④The model and number of the rear drive motor are engraved on the rear drive motor housing.

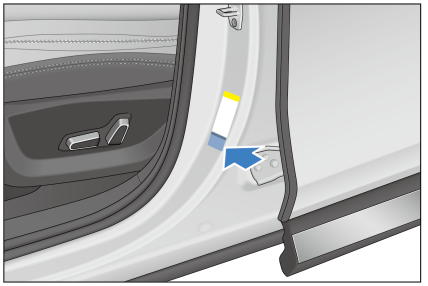



# Warning Labels

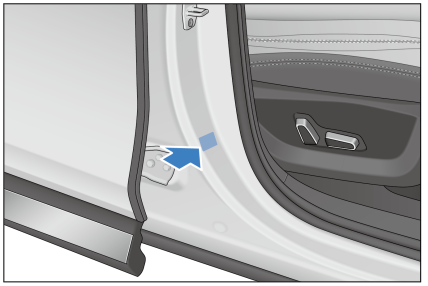
Side airbag warning labels are attached to the sheet metal surfaces under lock rings of left and right B-pillar door frames.



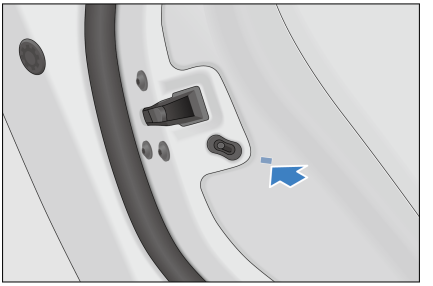
The tire pressure label is attached to the sheet metal surface of the left B-pillar door frame.



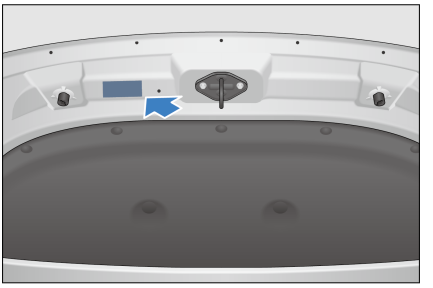
The battery position label is attached below the right B-pillar.



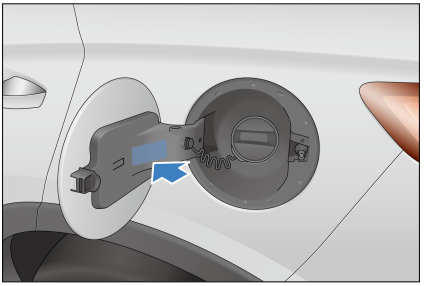
The child protection lock label is engraved on the rear door panel.



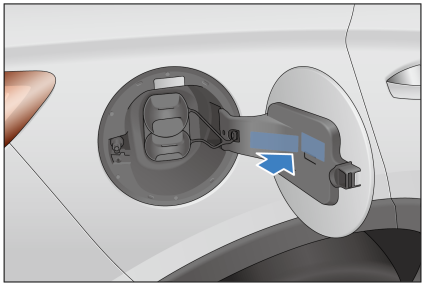
The A/C system label is attached to the right part of the inner hood surface.



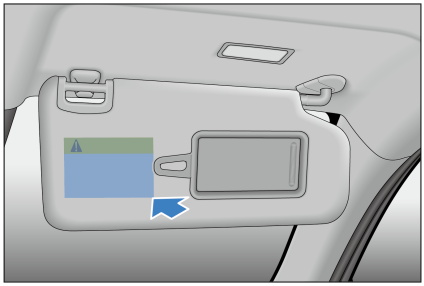
The unleaded gasoline indication label is pasted on the inner side of the fuel filler hatch.



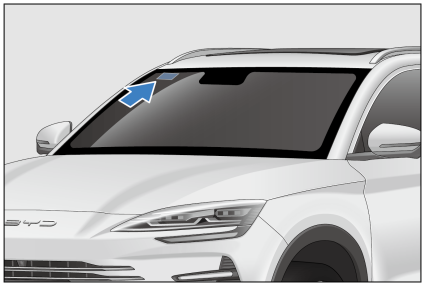
The warning label of the charging port cover is pasted on the inner side of the charging port cover.



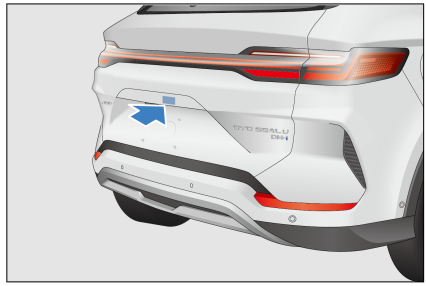
The airbag label is hot-stamped on the inner and outer sides of the right sun visor.



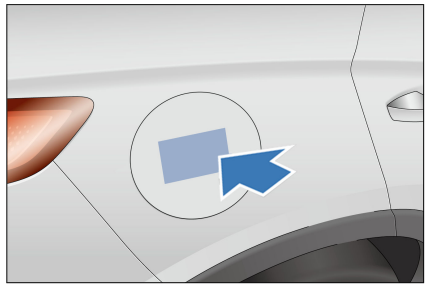
The anti-theft system label is attached to the corner of the front passenger side windshield.



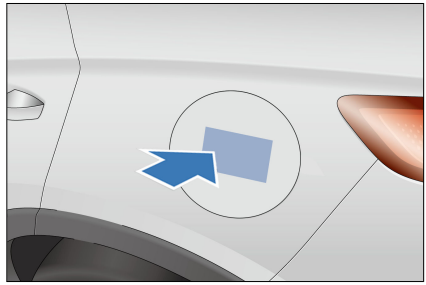
The trunk lid opening label is attached to the outer sheet metal surface of the trunk lid, directly above the trunk lid button.



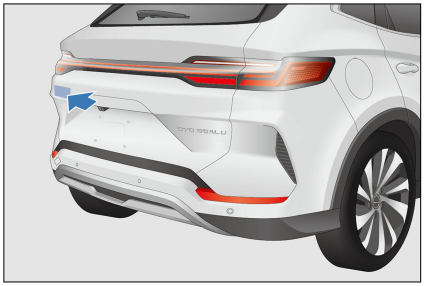
The charging label* is pasted on the surface of the charging port cover.



The charging label* is pasted on the surface of the fuel filler cap.

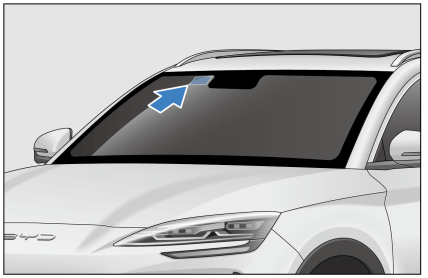


The charging label* is pasted on the back door metal sheet.



# Transponder Mounting Position

The transponder mounting position is located in the upper right of the front windscreen.



**CAUTION**

- Do not overlap with the glass frame or other objects when attaching the electronic logo.

# Declarations of Conformity

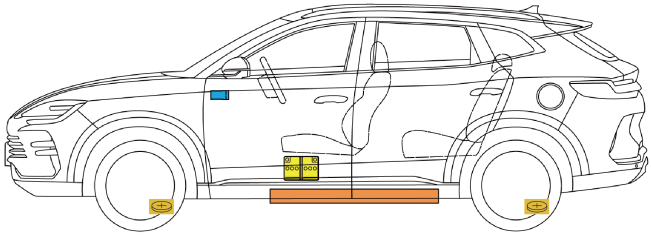
## Declarations of Conformity

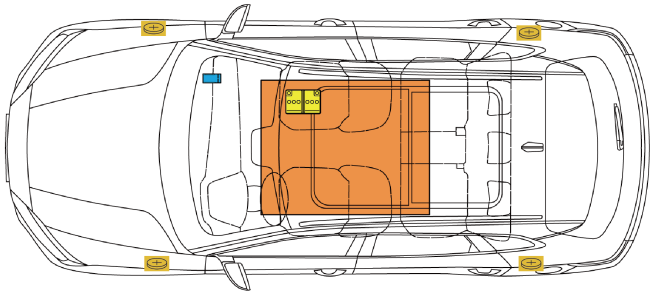
| Component Name | Frequency | Maximum Power |
|---|---|---|
| Tire pressure monitoring transmitter module | 314.9MHz±25KHz | 86dBμV/m±3dB |
| | 315MHz±45KHz | 3m field -58 ~ -52 dBm |
| | 433.92MHz±44KHz | 87dBμV/m±2dB |
| | 433.92MHz±40KHz | 3m field -58 ~ -52 dBm |
| Interior detection antenna | 125±3KHZ | 10w |
| Electronic smart key | 433.92MHZ±60KHZ | 10dbm |
| High-frequency module | 433.92MHZ±60KHZ | 0.48W |
| Sensory mobile phone wireless charging module 1 | 127.7K±30K | 15W (single side charging) |
| | | 15W*2 (bilateral charging) |

| Component Name | Frequency | Maximum Power |
|---|---|---|
| Sensory mobile phone wireless charging module 1 | 127.7K±30K | 50W |
| ECALL GPS antenna | 1559MHz ~ 1605MHz | 0.05W |
| ECALL 4G antenna | 701 MHz ~ 960 MHz | |
| | 1.71GHz~2.69GHz | |
| Exterior NFC device | 13.56MHz | 1W |
| In-Vehicle NFC Devices | 13.56MHz | 1.2W |
| On-board Bluetooth device | 2.402GHz ~ 2.480GHz | 8dBm |
| Wi-Fi hotspot device | 2.402GHz ~ 2.482GHz | 16dBm |
| | 5.17 GHz ~ 5.835 GHz | |
| Network communication antenna (4G) | 701 MHz ~ 960 MHz | / |
| | 1.71GHz ~ 2.69GHz | |
| Network communication device (4G) | 700MHz ~ 2600MHz | 23dBm |
| FM broadcasting antenna amplifier | 76MHz ~ 108MHz | 0.24W |
| FM radio broadcasting host | | 0.8 W |
| DAB antenna amplifier | 170MHz ~ 240MHz | 0.24W |
| DAB box | | 1.5 W |
| Four-in-one antenna (GPS, 4G, WiFi/BT) | 1559MHz ~ 1605MHz (GPS antenna) | 0.03W |
| | 701 MHz ~ 960 MHz 1.71GHz ~ 2.69GHz (4G antenna) | |
| | 2.4 GHz ~ 2.5 GHz (WiFi/BT antenna) | |
| MmWave radars | 76GHz ~ 77GHz | / |
| AM antenna amplifier | 522KHz ~ 1800KHz | 0.6W |
| AM host | | 0.8 W |

# Manufacturer and Importer Information

1. Battery Types and Manufacturers





| Pictogram | Battery Name | Certification | Manufacturer Information | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
|  | High-voltage battery | CE | Name | Shown in another Battery Parameters Document. |
| | | | Trade mark | |
| | | | Postal address | |
|  | Low-voltage battery | CE | Name | Qinghai FinDreams Battery Co., Ltd. |
| | | | Trade mark | BYD |
| | | | Postal address | No. 222 Jinchuan Road, Chengzhong District, Xining City, Qinghai Province, China |
|  | E-Call Spare battery | CE | Name | Jiangxi BetterPower New Energy Co., Ltd. |
| | | | Trade mark | BPI |
| | | | Postal address | No. 999 Chunshun Road, Yichun Economic and Technological Development Zone, Jiangxi Province, P. R. China |
| | | | Name | Panasonic Energy Co., Ltd. |

# Battery Parameters of Electrochemical Performance and Durability

1. Manufacturer Information

| Vehicle Configuration | Boost (80KM FWD) | Design (70KM AWD) | Comfort (125KM FWD) |
|---|---|---|---|
| Battery model | VD6 | VE4 | VF4 |
| Manufacturer | FinDreams Battery Zhengzhou Co., Ltd. | | Xiangyang FinDreams Battery Co., Ltd. |
| Trade mark | FinDreams | | FinDreams |
| Postal address | No.211, Zhiyang Road, Airport Economic Zone, Zhengzhou City, Henan Province, China | | No.1 Industrial Avenue, Shenzhen Industrial Pank, Xiangyang High-tech Zone, Xiangyang City, Hubei Province, China |
| Web or Email | https://www.fdbatt.com | | https://www.fdbatt.com |

2. Performance and Durability Information

| Trim Level | Boost (80KM FWD) | Design (70KM AWD) | Comfort (125KM FWD) |
|---|---|---|---|
| Battery model | VD6 | VE4 | VF4 |
| Rated capacity (in Ah) | 54Ah (RT, 1C+0.2C, charge; 1C, discharge; BOL) | | 78.4Ah (1C+0.2C, charge; 1C, Discharge; BOL) |
| Capacity fade (in %) | 30% (RT, 1C, after 3000cycle) | | 30% (RT, 1C, after 2500cycle) |
| Power (in W) (20%SOC) | Discharge at RT: $85.3*10^3$W (10s)<br>Charge at RT: $84.6*10^3$W (10s) | | Discharge at RT: $89*10^3$W (10s)<br>Charge at RT: $94*10^3$W (10s) |
| Power (in W) (80%SOC) | Discharge at RT: $94.7*10^3$W (10s)<br>Charge at RT: $53.5*10^3$W (10s) | Discharge at RT: $145.2*10^3$W (10s)<br>Charge at RT: $53.5*10^3$W (10s) | Discharge at RT: $185*10^3$W (10s)<br>Charge at RT: $69*10^3$W (10s) |
| Power fade (in %) (20%SOC) | 10% (RT, 20%SOC, 10s, after 3000cycle) | | 10% (RT, 20%SOC, 10s, after 2500cycle) |
| Power fade (in %) (80%SOC) | 10% (RT, 80%SOC, 10s, after 3000cycle) | | 10% (RT, 80%SOC, 10s, after 2500cycle) |
| Internal resistance (in Ω) | 0.13-0.18Ω (RT, 60%SOC, 3C, 10s, BOL) | | 0.1-0.15Ω (RT, 60%SOC, 3C, 10s, BOL) |
| Internal resistance increase (in %) | 40% (RT, 60%SOC, 3C, 10s, after 3000cycle) | | 40% (RT, 60%SOC, 3C, 10s, after 2500cycle) |
| Energy round trip efficiency | 92% (RT, 1C+0.2C charge, 1C discharge, BOL) | | 92% (RT, 1C+0.2C charge, 1C discharge, BOL) |
| Fade of energy round trip efficiency (in %) | 1% (RT, 1C+0.2C charge,1C discharge, after 3000cycle) | | 1% (RT, 1C+0.2C charge,1C discharge, after 2500cycle) |
| The expected life-time of the battery under the reference conditions for which it has been designed, in terms of cycles, except for non- cycle applications, and calendar years | 8y 3000cycle (70%SOH) | | 8y 2500cycle (70%SOH) |

Additional information:

Signature:

place and date : Shanghai 2024/7/12

## Numerics

12V Auxiliary Power..... 202

## A

A/C ON/OFF..... 190
A/C Operation Interface..... 191
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS)*..... 164
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)..... 138
Adjusting Front Seats..... 74, 75
Adjusting the Steering Wheel Manually..... 78
Air Purification System..... 196
Airbag Triggering Conditions and Precautions..... 19
Anti-theft System..... 41
Automatic Vehicle Washing..... 213

## B

Bill Box..... 199
Blind Spot Assist System*..... 158
Boot Cover Board..... 205
Brake fluid..... 221
Break-in Period..... 114

## C

Cargo Cover..... 203
Centre Console Cubby..... 200
Charging..... 99
Charging Precautions..... 97
Charging Safety Warnings..... 96
Child Presence Detection (CPD)... 163
Child Protection Lock..... 73
Child Seat Mounting..... 24
Control Function of Charging Port Anti-theft Lock..... 105
Cooling System..... 219

## D

Data Collection and Processing..... 42
Discharging Device..... 108
Door Bins..... 199
Driver and Front Passenger Front Airbags..... 17
Driver Attention Warning system. 162
Driver's Door Switches..... 83
Driving..... 129
Driving Safety Systems..... 178

## E

Electric External Rearview Mirrors.... 182
Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA)..... 156
Engine Flameout During Driving.. 237
Engine Oil..... 221
Engine Overheated..... 237
Exterior Cleaning..... 212

## F

Failure to Start the Vehicle..... 236
Fire Prevention..... 127
Folding Rear Seats..... 77
Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA) & Front Cross Traffic Braking (FCTB).... 151
Front seat cup holder..... 200
Front Seat Side Airbags and Front Centre Airbag..... 18
Fuel..... 122
Functions..... 192
Fuses..... 226

## G

Gearshift control panel..... 132
Glasses Case..... 201
Glove Box..... 199

## H

Hazard Warning Light Switch..... 86
Headlight adjustment switch..... 86
High Beam Assist(HMA)*..... 153
High-Voltage Battery..... 111
Hood..... 218

## I

If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted 236
If the Vehicle Needs Towing..... 238
Installing Child Restraint Systems. 24
Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) System..... 142
Intelligent Speed Limit Control (ISLC) System..... 161
Interior Cleaning..... 213
Interior Light Switch..... 92
Interior Rearview Mirror..... 182
Introduction to Airbags..... 17
Introduction to Seat Belts..... 14

## K

Keys..... 60

## L

Lane Departure Assist (LDA) System ..... 154
Light Switches..... 79
Loading Baggage..... 124
Locking/Unlocking Doors..... 64
Low-voltage Battery..... 112

## M

Maintenance Period and Items.... 208
Multi-Collision Brake (MCB) Function ..... 180

## P

Paint Maintenance Tips..... 212
Panoramic View System*..... 165
Parking Assist System*..... 170
Predictive Emergency Braking (PEB)* ..... 144
Pretensioner and Force Limiter*.... 14

## R

Rear Seat Head Supports..... 77
Regular Maintenance..... 211
Risk of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning..... 125

## S

Saving Fuel..... 123
SD Card Slot..... 202
Seatback Pockets..... 201
Seats..... 73
Side Curtain Airbags..... 19
Smart Access and Start System..... 71
Smartphone Wireless Charging Position..... 203
SOC setting function..... 107
Starting the Vehicle..... 128
Steering Wheel Switches..... 87
Sun Visor..... 201
Sunroof Maintenance..... 217

## T

Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)..... 160
Transponder Mounting Position.. 254
Tyre Pressure Monitoring..... 174
Tyres..... 223

## U

USB Ports..... 202
Using Seat Belts..... 14

## V

Vanity Mirror..... 201
Vehicle Corrosion Prevention..... 211
Vehicle Data..... 246
Vehicle Identification..... 250
Vehicle Storage..... 218
Vehicle Towing Function..... 115
Vehicle Wading..... 126

## W

Warning Labels..... 251
Washer..... 220
Wiper Blades..... 222
Wiper Switch..... 82
Wipers..... 183
Working mode selection of dual-mode system..... 35
Working Modes of Dual-Mode (DM) System..... 30

# Abbreviation List

## Abbreviations

| Terminology | Name | Terminology | Name |
|---|---|---|---|
| ABS | Anti-lock Braking System | ACC | Adaptive Cruise Control |
| AEB | Automatic Emergency Braking | AVAS | Acoustic Vehicle Alert System |
| AVH | Automatic Vehicle Hold | BSA | Blind Spot Assist |
| CDP | Controller Deceleration Parking | CRS | Children Restraint Systems |
| DOW | Door Open Warning | ECO | Economical Mode |
| ECU | Electronic Control Unit | EDR | Event Data Recorder |
| ELR | Emergency Locking Retractor | EPB | Electronic Parking Brake |
| ESC | Electronic Stability Controller | FCTA | Front Cross Traffic Alert |
| FCTB | Front Cross Traffic Braking | HBA | Hydraulic Brake Assist |
| HDC | Hill Descent Control | HHC | Hill Hold Control |
| HMA | High Beam Assist | ICC | Intelligent Cruise Control |
| ISLC | Intelligent Speed Limit Control | ISLI | Intelligent Speed Limit Information |
| LDA | Lane Departure Assist | LDP | Lane Departure Prevention |
| LDW | Lane Departure Warning | LSS | Lane Support System |
| MAX | Maximum | MIN | Minimum |
| NORMAL | Normal Mode | PCW | Predictive Collision Warning |
| RCTA | Rear Cross Traffic Alert | RCTB | Rear Cross Traffic Braking |
| RCW | Rear Collision Warning | SOC | State of Charge |
| SRS | Supplemental Restraint System | SPORT | Sport Mode |
| TPMS | Tire Pressure Monitoring System | TCS | Traction Control System |
| TSR | Traffic Sign Recognition | VIN | Vehicle Identification Number |
| VDC | Vehicle Dynamics Control | VTOL | Vehicle to Load |

BUILD YOUR DREAMS

Edition date: 12.2024 EN_V1